THE RUDIMENTS OF THE LATIN TONGUE.

A NEW EDITION, Corrected.

To which is prefixed,

An ESSAY on the ART of Conducting YOUTH, in *Grammatical Studies*. Never before printed.


BRITISH MUSEUM

THE

RUDIMENTS

OF THE

Latin Tongue:

OR,

A Plain and Easy Introduction

TO

LATIN GRAMMAR:

WHEREIN

The PRINCIPLES of the LANGUAGE are Methodically digested, both in ENGLISH and LATIN.

WITH

Useful NOTES *and* OBSERVATIONS, *explaining the* TERMS *of* GRAMMAR, *and farther improving its* RULES.

By THO. RUDDIMAN, *M. A.*

THE TWENTY-FOURTH EDITION, Corrected.
With an introductory ESSAY on *Grammatical Studies.*

GLASGOW:
Printed by WILLIAM SMITH,
For ROBERT FARIE, Bookseller; and Sold by him at his Shop, at *Yorick's Head*, Salt-mercat.

M.DCC.LXXXII.

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE following Edition of the RUDIMENTS has been carefully corrected, by an accurate copy, printed and reviſed by the late Mr. RUDDIMAN himſelf, the Author of it; and freed from ſeveral inaccuracies that had inadvertently crept into ſome late impreſſions thereof: and, it is hoped, upon peruſal, will give ſatisfaction to the intelligent teacher; and be found inferior to none, formerly printed, either in point of accuracy or elegance.

To this Edition is prefixed, by way of Introduction, an ESSAY on the art of conducting youth in *Grammatical Studies*, never before printed.

BRITISH MUSEUM

THE PREFACE.

AMONG the ſeveral inſtructors of Youth in this Nation, many have for a long Time complained, that the two *Rudiments* of the *Latin* Tongue, commonly taught in our Schools, are many ways inſufficient in reſpect to the End propoſed by them: That the one is written wholly in *Latin*, the very Language it is deſigned to teach; that the other is defective, particularly in the *Syntax*; and that the Rules of both are often obſcure and intricate, and ſometimes falſe and erroneous. Whereupon ſome knowing Maſters of that profeſſion, by their repeated Solicitations, prevailed with me to undertake the compiling of a *new Rudiments*, which they conceived might, in a great Meaſure, be freed from the Faults and Defects of the former, and ſo contriv-

ed, as to bring down its *Rules* to the Level of a Boy's Capacity, and make them enter with more Eaſe and Familiarity into his Mind. This is the End I had in view: With what Succeſs it has been proſecuted is a Province for others, not me, to determine. However, if any thing inclines me to hope its Acceptance in the World, it is owing to the kind Aſſiſtance I have had from time to time of the above-mentioned, and other Gentlemen, as the Duty of their reſpective Employments would permit them. What diſcouraged me moſt in this Undertaking, was the different Opinions of *Grammarians*, with the ſharp Conteſts and Diſputes they have had about the Method of *Inſtruction*, and the moſt proper Way to communicate the *Latin* Tongue to others, with the greateſt Facility and Expedition. It would be almoſt an endleſs Taſk to reckon up the various *Schemes* that have been projected for that purpoſe: Therefore I ſhall engage no farther in this Subject, than as it ſeems neceſſary to give my Reader a clear and diſtinct View of the Reaſons that determined me to the Method I have followed.

I have long obſerved, that thoſe of our Country, whoſe Buſineſs it is to direct the Studies of Youth, are greatly divided about

what an *Introduction to Latin Grammar* ought properly to contain, and in what Language its Precepts ſhould be conveyed. Some are for contracting it into as narrow Limits as is poſſible, and not to burden the Memory of the Learner with any thing but what is eſſential and abſolutely neceſſary; while others contend that this is too general, and not ſufficient to direct his Practice, without the Addition of more particular Rules. Again, though the greater Part incline to have the firſt *Principles* of *Grammar* communicated in a known Language, there are not a few, and of theſe ſome Perſons of Diſtinction, who are ſtill for retaining them in *Latin*, which, though attended at firſt with more Difficulty, makes (in their Judgment) a more laſting Impreſſion on the Mind, and carries the Learner more directly to the Habit of ſpeaking *Latin*, a Practice much uſed in our Schools. It appeared next to an Impoſſibility to ſatisfy ſo many different Opinions: However, the Method I have taken ſeems to bid faireſt for it; for I have reduced the Subſtance of theſe *Rudiments* into a Sort of *Text*, and have given the *Latin* an *Engliſh* Verſion, leaving the Maſter to his own Choice and Diſcretion which to uſe. And, that none may com-

plain that the *Text* is too compendious, I have ſubjoined large *Notes*, which, I humbly conceive, will ſupply that Defect.

To render my Deſign of more general Uſe, I was obliged to fall in with this Expedient, which has produced one Inconvenience, namely, that the Book is thereby ſwelled to a much greater Bulk than I could have wiſhed, or ſome perhaps will excuſe; though the Reaſons are ſo obvious, that it is needleſs to relate them. I confeſs I have been larger in the *Notes* than the Nature of a *Rudiments* ſeemed to require; but as, I preſume, there is nothing in them but what may be uſeful either to Maſter or Scholar; and ſince it was never my Intention that they ſhould be all taught, or any of them, with the ſame Care as the *Eſſential Parts*, I thought they might the more eaſily be diſpenſed with.

There is one Thing more, which has conſiderably increaſed them, *viz.* the *Remarks* I have added on *Engliſh Nouns*, *Pronouns*, and *Verbs*, which I judged uſeful on a double Account; *Firſt*, As they ſerve to illuſtrate *Latin Grammar*, the firſt Notions and Impreſſions whereof we receive from the Language we ourſelves ſpeak. *Secondly*, Becauſe the greater Number of thoſe who are taught the *Latin* Tongue, reap

little other Benefit from it, than as it enables them to ſpeak and write *Engliſh* with the greater Exactneſs, I ſuppoſed it would not be amiſs to throw in ſomething in order to that End.

Having thus given a general *Plan* of my Undertaking, all I ſhall ſay of the particular Management of it is, that I have laboured all along to render every Thing as plain and eaſy as I poſſibly could, conſidering with a tender Regard, for whoſe Benefit it is deſigned. I have conſulted the beſt *Grammarians*, both Ancient and Modern, and have borrowed from them whatever I conceived fit for my Purpoſe; tho' not contenting myſelf with their bare Authority, I frequently had Recourſe to the Fountain itſelf; I mean, the pureſt Writers of the *Latin* Tongue. As thus I have been ſolicitous to avoid *Error*, ſo I have been cautious not to incur the Cenſure of having affected *Novelty*, and therefore have receded no farther from the common *Syſtems*, than I think they have receded from Truth; retaining the uſual *Terms* of *Art*, which have ſo long obtained in the Schools, tho' ſometimes I have taken the Liberty, as I ſaw occaſion for it, to explain them my own Way. That I might lay no more Weight on the Memories of Children than

they could well bear, I have reduced the *Rules* to as ſmall a Number as the Subject would allow of, and conceived them in as few Words as was conſiſtent with Perſpicuity; leaving it to the Induſtry of the Teacher to explain them more fully, as he ſhall find neceſſary, without which no *Rules* can be ſufficient. The *Syntax* is indeed longer than was to be wiſhed; but I frankly own, that I do not ſee how it can be made much ſhorter, without either confounding its Order, or leaving out the *Eliptycal Rules*. However, to remove the Objection as much as I could, I have ſubjoined a more *Compendious Syntax*, conſiſting only of a few *Fundamental Rules*, which may be taught alone, or before the other, as the Judgment and Diſcretion of the Maſter ſhall direct him.

AN
ESSAY
On the ART of Conducting YOUTH,
IN
GRAMMATICAL STUDIES.

THE culture of the human mind is, of all other ſciences, the moſt important, the moſt difficult and extraordinary. Were we to judge from the ſkill and addreſs of many of thoſe men, who are entruſted with the education of youth, we would be apt to imagine that it is a matter of no great moment.—Philip, king of Macedon, thought very differently; when Alexander was born, though Philip was then engaged in the midſt of his conqueſts, and in the full career of his glory, he wrote to Ariſtotle the following letter. "I give you notice, "that I have a ſon born; but I am not ſo much obliged to "the gods for his birth, as for the happineſs that he is come "into the world, while there is an Ariſtotle living: for, I "hope, that being brought up under your direction and tui"tion, he ſhall not prove unworthy of his father's glory, nor "of the empire he ſhall leave him." Alexander was of the ſame opinion, and frequently declared, That he loved Ariſtotle no leſs than his father; being indebted to the latter only for living, but to the former for living well.

The period of life, when, like wax, the mind can receive any impreſſion, ſeems to be at thoſe years, which are generally devoted to Grammar-ſchool Studies. The hiſtory of Rome, which is conſtantly in the hands of youth, during theſe years, furniſhes a great variety of the moſt excellent examples of magnanimity, temperance, diſintereſtedneſs, addreſs, and politeneſs, which a ſkillful teacher knows well how to turn to the account of his charge, ſo as to leave an impreſſion that will laſt to their lateſt breath. So true it is, what Quintilian obſerves; *Natura enim tenaciſſimi ſumus eorum*, &c. "For "what is learned at that age is eaſily imprinted in the mind, "and leaves deep marks behind it, which cannot be eaſily "effaced: As in the caſe of a new veſſel, which long pre"ſerves the tincture of the firſt liquor poured into it; and, "like wool, which can never recover its firſt whiteneſs, after "it has been once dyed. What heightens the misfortune is, "that bad habits laſt longer than good ones."

For this reaſon, the legiſlators and philoſophers of antiquity, carried their vigilance and attention, with regard to the education of youth, to a degree of enthuſiaſm, which ſhould aſhame Chriſtian parents and teachers at this day. They required that every thing in a city ſhould teach and inſpire virtue; inſcriptions, pictures, ſtatues, plays, and converſations; and that from whatever is repreſented to the ſenſes, there ſhould be derived a ſalutary air and breath, which ſhould imperceptibly inſinuate itſelf into the ſouls of children; and aſſiſted by the inſtruction of a good teacher, ſhould incline them from their tendereſt years, to the love of probity, and a regard for the honeſt and the decent.

I. "To ſtudy the different diſpoſitions of children, and to "gain their affections, in order to manage them well."

The mind of man, even in his infancy, bears the yoke with impatience, and naturally inclines to what is forbidden; for which reaſon he requires more precaution and addreſs, and yields more willingly to mildneſs than violence. To grow acquainted with children, we muſt allow them liberty at firſt to follow their natural bent, that we may diſcover their inclinations the better. We muſt comply with their little infirmities, to encourage them to let us ſee them; to obſerve their tempers when they leaſt expect it, eſpecially at play, when they are moſt off their guard. Having thus found out the temper and diſpoſition, and the natural bent of their inclinations, the teacher has then a compaſs by which he may ſteer to the intended port. The ſpur and the rein muſt be therefore uſed accordingly. Some are lazy and remiſs; and unleſs they are continually called upon, will make no proficiency; whilſt there are others, who cannot bear to be imperiouſly treated. Fear reſtrains ſome, whilſt others can only be drawn by the cords of love. Some are only ſubdued by inceſſant labour and application; others will only ſtudy by fits and ſtarts: to bring them all to a level, is perhaps impoſſible; and at any rate, requires the utmoſt ſkill and addreſs in the teacher. Indulgence, on the one hand, makes way for licentiouſneſs; —conſtraint, on the other, ſerves only to make them ſtupid. Commendation may excite, but it alſo may open a way for vanity and preſumption. How much prudence is therefore requiſite in a maſter to keep a juſt medium, equally removed from the two extremes? For the ill, in this inſtance, borders ſo cloſely upon the good, that want of judgment or experience

may eaſily miſtake the one for the other, which is the reaſon that the management of youth appears frequently ſo difficult. Perſonal characters, like perſonal defects, may be ſomewhat redreſſed, but not perfectly cured. A child whoſe leading turn is gaiety, cannot be formed ſo as to appear naturally grave; nor one who is naturally ſerious, to have a lively and chearful turn.—There are purpoſes in life, to which almoſt every turn of mind is calculated; and he who has ſtudied human nature, as much as his profeſſion ſeems to require, will not fail to cultivate every genius for that proſpect, for which it ſeems to have been intended by nature; adding, retrenching, and poliſhing, as bids faireſt for acting a proper part in life. *Sic itaque inter utrumque regendus eſt, ut modo frænis utamur modo ſtimulis.* Sen. lib. ii. cap. 21.

II. "The authority aſſumed over children ſhould be immediate, ſo as to imprint reſpect, and to procure obedience." This is a maxim of the greateſt moment, both for ſcholar and maſter. But this authority is neither obtained by age nor ſtature, by ſmiles nor frowns, by impotent threats nor vain promiſes; but by an even, firm, and moderate diſpoſition of mind, always maſter of itſelf, guided only by reaſon, and never acted by caprice or paſſion. It is this which preſerves order, eſtabliſhes an exact diſcipline, takes care that every command be duely obſerved, and ſaves the trouble of reprimands and correction. If a teacher does not ſeize upon this favourable opportunity, to poſſeſs himſelf at firſt of this authority, he will find difficulty in doing it again; and it is more than probable the child will get the ſuperiority at laſt. Fear and love are the two great hinges upon which all authority turns, in governments, as well as ſeminaries of learning. Fear, if it ſtands ſingle, will not be long regarded, as the hope of impunity may ſoon remove it; but if nothing is promiſed, either with reſpect to rewards or puniſhments, but what is literally performed, and every method taken by the maſter to convince the child of the propriety of his laws, the difficulty which may at firſt occur in point of management, will ſoon be removed.

There are ſome paſſages of Quintilian which convey ſome admirable inſtructions on this head. "A maſter," ſays he, "ſhould above all things aſſume a fatherly affection for his "pupils, putting himſelf in place of thoſe who gave them to "him in charge; for which reaſon he muſt borrow the gen"tleneſs, patience, and tenderneſs which is natural to parents.

" —He muſt be ſevere, without roughneſs; gentle, without " indulgence; that he may neither be hated for the one, nor " diſpiſed for the other. He muſt never appear in a paſſion; " but, at the ſame time, he muſt never ſhut his eyes to ſuch " faults as merit correction. In reprimanding, he muſt not " be too ſevere nor ſhocking; for nothing is more apt to " create an averſion to ſtudy, than rebukes with an air of " hatred. In fine, it is the buſineſs of the maſter to procure " the love and eſteem of his ſcholars, and to ſet every good " example in his own conduct before them; for it is hardly " conceivable how eaſily we are led to copy after thoſe, of " whom we have once formed a favourable opinion." Nothing hurts the authority of a teacher more than the exaction of implicite obedience, and the performance of every taſk, upon the faith of his *ipſe dixit*, without ſhowing them ſome agreeable end, or ſolid purpoſe to reconcile their reaſon to his commands.—From infancy, children love to be treated like reaſonable creatures. A ſenſe of honour, and a ſenſe of ſhame, properly impreſſed and kept up, and a fixed invariable rule obſerved, never to let one give up his taſk to go home, till he ſhould be as much maſter of it, as in the nature of things, he can well be, will always keep the ſcholar's attention engaged, keep his thoughts collected, and habituate him to application.

III. " To accuſtom children to ſpeak truth, to be polite, " clean, and punctual."

Diſſimulation and equivocation lead directly to downright lying, which, for that reaſon, ſhould never paſs without cenſure. Children ſhould neither ſee nor hear any thing, at home, or in the claſs, but what is conducive to a love of truth, and a contempt for low cunning and double dealing. They muſt be early taught to be explicite and ingenuous; and no reaſon given them, upon any account, to have recourſe to deceitful means to evade puniſhment, or procure what pleaſes them moſt.

Good breading and politeneſs cannot be too much enjoined and inculcated. Any one who looks about him in the world, will have often occaſion to remark, that almoſt every thing is judged by its outſide. A diamond, unleſs it be poliſhed, will never be uſed as an ornament. To attain this end, thoſe diſpoſitions muſt be conquered, which ſeem oppoſite to the rules of ſociety and converſation; ſuch as, a clowniſhneſs,

ſelf-love, pride, petulance, *&c.* For this purpoſe alſo, it is very proper, that children be accuſtomed to take care of their dreſs, that they may always be clean. Their health, as well as their appearance, requires it. In all theſe particulars the maſter muſt ſet the example. He muſt never, before children, ſpeak any thing in vain;—he muſt always, even when he rebukes, addreſs them as gentlemen, that he may not ſeem to exact any reſpect from his pupils, but what, upon all occaſions, he fails not to pay them.

IV. "To lay a proper foundation." In every art and ſcience, the firſt elements and principles have ſomething dry and diſguſting; and yet, unleſs they are well digeſted and properly underſtood, no great proficiency can be expected. For which reaſon, a careful and ſkilful maſter will omit nothing that can make ſtudy agreeable at this time. The nature of every part of ſpeech ought to be defined, and their various inflexions made extremely familiar; inſomuch that the ſcholar ſhould be able to anſwer to any caſe, mood, or tenſe, in Latin, or in Engliſh, in an inſtant. The flexion of ſubſtantives and adjectives of the ſame and different declenſions, and the various parts of verbs, with the roots from which they reſpectively ſpring, ſhould be made their conſtant exerciſe. When they are fit for Syntax, upon which the principal ſuperſtructure is to be raiſed, it will not be enough to commit the rules and examples to memory; the examples muſt be reſolved, a reaſon for every thing aſſigned, and ſimilar examples ſet, for exerciſing the reaſon and improving the judgment of the ſcholars, which will have a wonderful effect in forming them to write grammatically afterwards.

V. *To tranſlate.* When a proper foundation hath been thus laid in radical words, for which Mair's vocabulary ſeems very well calculated; and in flexion and conſtruction, it is time then to enter upon tranſlation. At the end of Ruddiman's Rudiments, there are a few apophthegms, which are very proper to begin with, as the ſentences are ſhort, and conſequently the order not embarraſſing. Tranſlation is not the only object in view. The import of every ſentence, the flexion and conſtruction of every word, and the phraſes throughout the whole muſt be throughly learned and minutely examined.

As it is of ſingular ſervice to facilitate the work of learning, and take off from its bitterneſs, as much as poſſible, Cor-

dery, with a literal tranſlation, may next be put in the hands of the claſs. This they ſhould tranſlate word for word, from Latin to Engliſh, and from Engliſh to Latin. To tranſlate from the original, without ſuch help, would at firſt be too much for both maſter and ſcholar, having alſo flexion, conſtruction, derivation, compoſition, and phraſeology upon their hands. By means of the tranſlation, they will be able to do more, and the phraſes will be more eaſily collected and remembered.—After Cordery, Eutropius with a literal tranſlation may next be adopted. At this period, the examination ſhould be very particular, and varied in all poſſible ſhapes, to beget a promptneſs, which is of no ſmall moment in common life. All the phraſes the leſſon affords ſhould be particularly pointed out, put and anſwered to, either in Engliſh or Latin. By conſtant exerciſes of this kind, the ſtudent will have his memory ſo ſtored with claſſical phraſes, that before he has finiſhed his courſe, the uſe of a dictionary will be in a great meaſure ſuperſeded. In reading Eutropius, the attention ought to be fixed to the examination of characters and events. Eutropius writes a conciſe hiſtory of Rome. In every chapter ſomething may be learned, and ſome reflexion raiſed from it. When a ſtudent is accuſtomed early to make an eſtimate of what he reads, he will be inſenſibly led to approve or diſapprove of actions, by tracing them back to the ſecret ſprings which moved them. He will then begin to read with greater pleaſure; his curioſity will excite him to new acquiſitions of knowledge, and his progreſs will be ſure and rapid in proportion.

After Eutropius, Cæſar's Commentaries may be put in the hands of the claſs, without any other tranſlation, than what they are furniſhed with from the maſter. To vary the entertainment now, they ſhould be introduced to practical geography, not during the public hours of ſtudy, but at a private hour. The pleaſure ariſing from more enlarged ideas, from following Cæſar in all his battles, and accompanying him in all his marches and counter-marches, will make ſufficient amends for the extraordinary application. Nay, they will be eager to preſs forward to gain new intelligence, and ſee more of the world.

When as much of this author has been read, as will be ſufficient to enable the ſtudents, by ſelf-application, to make ſomething of the remainder, Salluſt may then be very properly adopted. It is worth while, however, to obſerve here, as no-

velty has always charms for youth, it ought to be made a rule, and notified frequently to the ſtudents, that they can get no new author, till they ſhall have made out ſeveral leſſons of the author in their hands, without preſcription. This will animate them to perſeverance, and to labour with ardour to merit a change.—With Salluſt, Virgil may alſo be introduced. A leſſon in his paſtorals in the week, will be at firſt ſufficient. An hour now, ſhould be ſet apart for explaining to the claſs the tropes and figures of rhetoric, to lay a foundation for good taſte in compoſition, and true criticiſm in reading. Upon theſe principles, the beauties which occur in the dreſs, as well as in the ſentiment, ought to be pointed out and explained; the natural meaning of words, which under the appearance of ſynonimous, convey different ideas, ſhould be diſtinguiſhed and aſcertained; as, *Simulatio et diſſimulatio, gaudium et lætitia, timor et metus, ſecordia et deſidia*, &c.

Before the Æneid be put in the hands of ſtudents, the nature of an epic poem ſhould be fully explained, and the Roman mythology ſufficiently underſtood, otherwiſe much of the beauties of that elegant poem would be totally loſt.—It would not be improper that ſome ſelect paſſages of the beſt Roman claſſics were committed to memory, and repeated in public; it would not only give the ſtudent more aſſurance, but accuſtom him to pronounce gracefully, and acquire an agreeable manner.—When the claſs comes to read Horace, Livy, Terence, and Cicero, a good teacher will find many opportunities of new improvements, with which theſe authors will amply furniſh him.

VI. "Of making Latin, and writing verſions." However much theſe exerciſes may be neglected in ſome Grammar ſchools, they are a neceſſary and eſſential part of the buſineſs: For, it is abſolutely certain, that no man ever had a grammatical, far leſs a critical knowledge of any language that could not write it. After the claſs has read Cordery, an hour ought to be ſpent every morning in making Latin from Mair's or Clark's Introduction, which may be repeated at the end of the week, with the Vocables concealed. Moreover, four times a week a ſentence in Engliſh ſhould be given in writing, at firſt ſhort and eaſy, and afterwards increaſing with their experience, to be turned into Latin. Here the Vocables muſt be furniſhed by themſelves, from their collection of phraſes, or the dictionary.—In examining theſe exerciſes, flexion and conſtruction

fall to be firſt regarded; and when theſe are properly fixed, the claſs ſhould gradually be led to a claſſical arangement, as well as the various beauties which diſcover taſte and judgment.

In one word, theſe exerciſes ſhould keep pace with their tranſlation, which will fix in their minds not only the maſter's obſervations, but what occurs to themſelves in the other parts of their ſtudies, and render them practical and uſeful. After they have finiſhed the Introduction, with the Hiſtorical part, they ſhould ſtill continue the ſame exerciſe every morning from Goldſmith's Roman hiſtory, without droping the exerciſe of writing; for that alone will render the knowledge of language particular. That their knowledge of the Engliſh language may not ſuffer in the mean time, a verſion from Latin to Engliſh ſhould be preſcribed once a week. This, with the tranſlation, *viva voce*, will be a ſufficient balance to the Latin exerciſes, and render the ſtudent equally converſant in both.

VII. "To teach by Grammar, the moſt rational plan."

Although the way to ſcience of every kind ſhould be cut as ſhort, and the journey rendered as eaſy and agreeable as poſſible, yet we ought never to loſe ſight of the point for which we are ſteering, nor ſuffer ourſelves to be miſled by a falſe light, or all our labour will end in diſappointment. Some, for the eaſe of the ſtudents, have of late years introduced a method of fixing the rules of Grammar in the memory of a ſtudent, by curſory obſervations in the authors he has occaſion to read, without the trouble of, or ſpending time with mandating rules. Others have adopted a middle way, by uſing Grammars in Engliſh proſe. Both theſe plans are equally unſafe. For one ſingle ſtudent perhaps either might do; but for a whole claſs, where the genius and temper of the ſtudents may be very different, neither can be effectual, unleſs it can be ſuppoſed that they may walk in the dark as eaſily as in broad day.—Curſory obſervations are abſolutely neceſſary to explain and fix the rules, after they are attained; but without rules, to render them practical, they muſt be reiterated and multiplied to a prodigious degree; ſo that little or no time will be ſaved by that alternative. On the other hand, rules in proſe are ſoon forgot, unleſs they be conſtantly put in practice; whereas the experience of many ages has confirmed the ſtability of Latin Grammar upon the minds of ſtudents, through the whole courſe of their lives.—In ſhort, it is only

requiſite to conſider the end, uſe, and deſign of Grammatical ſtudies, in their full extent; the copiouſneſs of the Latin language; the great variety of its flexions, and modes of expreſſion; and withal, the foundation it ought to lay in univerſal Grammar, to be convinced, that to teach ſcientifically, the beſt Latin Grammar is not only expedient, but neceſſary and eſſential: to get the rules by heart, will ſtrengthen the memory; and the application will not only fix them there, but inſenſibly improve all the reaſoning faculties, fix the attention, and open all the avenues to polite literature.—The objection that it will take up too much time and labour can be of no weight, when the utility of the meaſure is put in balance.

VIII. "The degree of learning neceſſary to qualify a "ſtudent for entering the univerſity."

To be ſatisfied with a ſmattering only of any language or ſcience, will always be found an error of the firſt magnitude. Such knowledge, will neither be conſequential nor permanent. On the contrary, it will be extremely hurtful. A youth who has finiſhed his grammatical courſe, in a ſuperficial and unintelligent manner, will be ſatisfied with the ſame degree of knowledge in every thing elſe. He will regard the ſhadow more than the ſubſtance, and the appearance more than the reality. It is of the utmoſt conſequence for young people to be made early and experimentally ſenſible, that they became ſtudents for ſome ſalutary purpoſe, which cannot be ultimately fruſtrated: convinced of this, they will conſider every future ſtudy in the ſame point of view, and perſevere with ardour to ſurmount every difficulty to accompliſh it.

Young people are generally put under the care of a teacher of humanity at eight years of age; and by applying, for the firſt year, only ſix hours a-day, and ſeven hours a-day afterwards, may, in the courſe of five years, under a ſkilful maſter, be able to tranſlate any proſe author from Latin to Engliſh, or from Engliſh to Latin at ſight. This at leaſt they ſhould be able to do, beſides the other acquiſitions recommended in the foregoing part of this Eſſay, before they paſs from the Grammar ſchool to the Univerſity, or their time muſt be inevitably loſt there. It is true, they may, by the help of private tutors, paſs unobſerved in the crowd; but they can make no real progreſs: And what is ſtill worſe, they will be left at

laſt utter ſtrangers to ſelf-application, which may, by truſting all to external aſſiſtance now, remain afterwards for ever inactive.—I have heard of teachers who pretended to qualify youth for an Univerſity in three years; but ſurely ſuch know little of the end, the deſign, the uſe, or the extent of Grammatical Studies. They put me in mind of itinerant dancing-maſters, who pretend to teach the minuet in two months, which a Gallini would ſcarcely undertake to do to purpoſe, in as many years.

To conclude, the Grammar-ſchool is the place where Youth ought to be habituated to labour, to accuracy, to punctuality, to decency, and to probity. It is there where a foundation in good morals, good taſte, and true criticiſm ought to be laid; and it is there where the attention ought to be fixed, the judgment enlarged, and reaſon expanded. All this cannot be done in an inſtant; but it ought undoubtedly to be done, if theſe are regarded as points of importance in the education of youth.—To confine Grammatical Studies to a few Latin words, and a few pages of a very few books, which is too often the caſe, cannot miſs to leave the ſtudent in a ſituation little better than when he entered upon theſe ſtudies: And what is of ſtill more dangerous conſequence, he will acquire a diſguſt at learning in general, and an attachment to many bad habits, which will require much time and attention to eradicate.—At this age, therefore, and during this Introduction to polite literature, parents cannot be too cautious in the choice of a teacher for their children, as all their future proſpects depend, in a great meaſure, on their proper inſtitution, in this reſpect.

GRAMMATICUS.

Errors, like ſtraws, upon the ſurface flow;
He who would ſearch for pearls muſt dive below.

DRYDEN.

THE

RUDIMENTS

OF THE

Latin Tongue:

OR,

A Plain and Easy INTRODUCTION

TO

LATIN GRAMMAR.

PARS PRIMA.

De LITERIS & SYLLABIS.

Magister.

QUOT sunt Literæ apud Latinos?

Discipulus. Quinque & viginti; *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.*

M. Quomodo dividuntur?

D. In Vocales & Consonantes.

M. Quot sunt Vocales?

D. Sex; *a, e, i, o, u, y.*

PART FIRST.

Of LETTERS *and* SYLLABLES.

Master.

HOW *many Letters are there among the* Latins?

Scholar. *Five and twenty;* a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

M. *How are they divided?*

S. *Into Vowels and Consonants.*

M. *How many Vowels are there?*

S. *Six;* a, e, i, o, u, y.

M. Quot ſunt Conſonantes?

D. Novemdecim; *b, c, d, f, g, h j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.*

M. Quot ſunt Diphthongi?

D. Quinque; *ae,* [vel *æ*] *oe,* [vel *œ*] *au, eu, ei;* ut, *aetas,* vel *ætas, poena,* vel *pœna, audio, euge, hei.*

M. *How many Conſonants are there?*

S. *Nineteen;* b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.

M. *How many Diphthongs are there?*

S. *Five;* ae, [*or* æ] oe [*or* œ] au, eu, ei; *as,* aetas, *or* ætas, poena, *or* pœna, audio, euge, hei.

NOTES.

GRAMMAR, is the Art of ſpeaking any Language rightly; as, *Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Engliſh*, &c.

Latin Grammar is the Art of ſpeaking rightly the *Latin Tongue.*

The *RUDIMENTS* of that Grammar are plain and eaſy Inſtructions, teaching Beginners the firſt Principles, or the moſt common and neceſſary Rules of *Latin.*

The *Rudiments* may be reduced to theſe four Heads, I. Treating of *Letters.* II. Of *Syllables.* III. Of *Words.* IV. Of *Sentences.*

Theſe are naturally made up one of another; for one or more Letters make a Syllable, one or more Syllables make a Word, and two or more Words make a Sentence.

A *Letter* is a Mark or Character repreſenting an uncompounded Sound.

K, Y, Z, are only to be found in Words originally *Greek,* and *H* by ſome is not accounted a Letter, but a Breathing.

We reckon the *J,* called *Jod* [or *Je*] and the *V,* called *Vau,* two Letters diſtinct from *I* and *U,* becauſe not only their Figures, but their Powers or Sounds are quite different; *J* ſounding like *G* before *E,* and *V* almoſt like *F.*

A *Vowel* is a Letter that makes a full and perfect Sound by itſelf.

A *Conſonant* is a Letter that cannot Sound without a Vowel.

A *Syllable* is any one complete Sound.

There can be no Syllable without a Vowel: And any of the ſix Vowels alone, or any Vowel with one or more Conſonants before or after it make a Syllable.

There are, for the moſt part, as many Syllables in a Word as there are Vowels in it: Only there are two Kinds of Syllables in which it is otherwiſe, *viz.* 1. When *U* with any other Vowel comes after *G, Q* or *S,* as in *Lingua, Qui, Suadeo;* where the Sound of the *U* vaniſhes, or is little heard. 2. When two Vowels join to make a Diphthong or double Vowel.

A *Diphthong* is a Sound compounded of the Sounds of two Vowels, ſo as both of them are heard.

Of *Diphthongs* three are *Proper*, viz. *au, eu, ei,* in which both Vowels are heard; and two *Improper*, viz. *æ, œ,* in which the *a* and *o* are not heard, but they are pronounced as *e* ſimple.

Some, not without Reaſon, to theſe five Diphthongs, add other three, as, *ai* in *Maia, oi* in *Troia, yi* or *ui* in *Harpyia* or *Harpuia.*

PARS SECUNDA.

De Dictionibus.

M. QUot ſunt Partes Orationis?

D. Octo; *Nomen, Pronomen, Verbum, Participium; Adverbium, Præpoſitio, Interjectio, Conjunctio.*

M. Quomodo dividuntur?

D. In Declinabiles & Indeclinabiles.

M. Quot ſunt Declinabiles?

D. Quatuor; *Nomen, Pronomen, Verbum, Participium.*

M. Quot ſunt Indeclinabiles?

D. Item quatuor; *Adverbium, Præpoſitio, Interjectio, Conjunctio.*

PART SECOND.

Of WORDS.

M. *HOW many Parts of Speech are there?*

S. *Eight;* Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle, Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, Conjunction.

M. *How are they divided?*

S. *Into Declinable and Indeclinable.*

M. *How many are Declinable?*

S. *Four;* Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle.

M. *How many are Indeclinable?*

S. *Likewiſe four;* Adverb, Prepoſition, Interjection, Conjunction.

A *Word* [*Vox* or *dictio*] is one or more Syllables joined together, which Men have agreed upon to ſignify ſomething.

Words are commonly reduced to eight *Claſſes*, called *Parts of Speech*: But ſome compriſe them all under three Claſſes, *viz. Noun, Verb*, and *Adverb*. Under *Noun* they comprehend alſo *Pronoun* and *Participle;* and under *Adverb* alſo *Prepoſition, Interjection*, and *Conjunction*. Others to theſe add a fourth *Claſs*, viz. *Adnoun*, comprehending Adjectives under it, and reſtricting *Noun* to *Subſtantives* only. Theſe by ſome are otherwiſe called *Names, Qualities, Affirmations*, and *Particles*.

The declinable Parts of Speech are ſo called, becauſe there is ſome Change made upon them, eſpecially in their laſt Syllables: And this is what we call *Declenſion*, or *declining* of Words. But the Indeclinable Parts continue unchangeably the ſame.

The laſt Syllable, on which theſe Changes do fall, is called the *Ending* or *Termination* of Words.

Theſe Changes are made by what Grammarians call *Accidentia, i. e.* The *Accidents* of Words.

Theſe *Accidents* are commonly reckoned ſix, *viz. Gender, Caſe, Number; Mood, Tenſe*, and *Perſon*. Of theſe, *Gender* and *Caſe* are peculiar to three of the declinable Parts of Speech, *viz. Noun, Pronoun*, and *Participle;* and *Mood, Tenſe*, and *Perſon* are peculiar to one of them, *viz. Verb:* And Number is common to them all.

NOTE, 1. That *Perſon* may alſo be ſaid to belong to Noun or Pronoun: But then it is not properly an Accident, becauſe no Change is made by it in the Word.

NOTE, 2. That *Figure*, *Species*, and *Comparison*, which some call *Accidents*, do not properly come under that Name, because the Words have a different Signification from what they had before. *See Chap.* IX.

NOTE, 3. That the Changes that happen to a Noun, Pronoun, and Participle, are, in a stricter Sense, called *Declension* or *Declination* of them, and the changes that happen to a Verb are called *Conjugation*.

CAP. I.

De Nomine.

M. QUomodo declinatur Nomen?

D. Per Genera, Casus, & Numeros.

M. Quot sunt Genera?

D. Tria; *Masculinum*, *Femininum*, & *Neutrum*.

M. Quot sunt Casus?

D. Sex; *Nominativus*, *Genitivus*, *Dativus*, *Accusatius*, *Vocativus*, & *Ablativus*.

M. Quot sunt Numeri?

D. Duo; *Singularis* & *Pluralis*.

M. Quot sunt Declinationes?

D. Quinque; *Prima*, *Secunda*, *Tertia*, *Quarta*, & *Quinta*.

REGULÆ GENERALES.

1. Nomina neutri generis habent Nominativum, Accusativum, & Vocativum similes in utroque Numero; & hi Casus in Plurali semper desinunt in *a*.

2. Vocativus in Singulari plerumque, in Plurali semper, est similis Nominativo.

CHAP. I.

Of NOUN.

M. HOW *is a Noun declined?*

S. *By Genders, Cases, and Numbers.*

M. *How many Genders are there?*

S. *Three;* Masculine, Feminine, *and* Neuter.

M. *How many Cases are there?*

S. *Six;* Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, *and* Ablative.

M. *How many Numbers are there?*

S. *Two;* Singular *and* Plural.

M. *How many Declensions are there?*

S. *Five;* First, Second, Third, Fourth, *and* Fifth.

GENERAL RULES.

1. *Nouns of the Neuter Gender have the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative alike in both Numbers: And these Cases in the Plural end always in* a.

2. *The Vocative for the most part in the Singular,* [*and*] *always in the Plural, is like the Nominative.*

3. Dativus & Ablativus Pluralis ſunt ſimiles.

4. Nomina propria plerumque carent Plurali.

3. *The Dative and Ablative Plural are alike.*

4. *Proper Names for the moſt part want the Plural.*

A *NOUN* is that Part of Speech which ſignifies the Name or Quality of a Thing; as, *Homo*, a Man; *Bonus*, good.

A *Noun* is either *Subſtantive* or *Adjective*.

A *Subſtantive Noun* is, That which ſignifies the Name of a Thing; as, *Arbor*, a Tree; *Virtus*, Virtue; *Bonitas*, Goodneſs.

An *Adjective Noun* is, That which ſignifies an Accident, Quality, or Property of a Thing; as, *Albus*, white; *Felix*, happy; *Gravis*, heavy.

A Subſtantive may be diſtinguiſhed from an Adjective theſe two ways: 1. A Subſtantive can ſtand in a Sentence without an Adjective, but an Adjective cannot without a Subſtantive; as, I can ſay, *A Stone falls*, but I cannot ſay, *Heavy falls*. 2. If the Word *Thing* be joined with an Adjective, it will make Senſe; but if it be joined with a Subſtantive, it will make Nonſenſe: Thus we ſay, *A good Thing*, *a white Thing*; but we do not ſay, *a Man Thing*, *a Beaſt Thing*.

A Subſtantive Noun is divided into *Proper* and *Appellative*.

A *Proper Subſtantive* is, That which agrees to one particular Thing of a Kind; as, *Virgilius*, a Man's Name; *Penelope*, a Woman's Name; *Scotia*, Scotland; *Edinburgum*, Edinburgh; *Taus*, the Tay.

An *Appellative Subſtantive* is, That which is common to a whole Kind of Things; as, *Vir*, a Man; *Fœmina*, a Woman; *Regnum*, a Kingdom; *Urbs*, a City; *Fluvius*, a River.

NOTE, That when a proper Name is applied to many, it becomes an Appellative; as, *duodecim Cæſares*, the twelve Cæſars.

GENDER in a natural Senſe is the Diſtinction of Sex, or the Difference between Male and Female; but in a Grammatical Senſe, we commonly underſtand by it, the Fitneſs that a *Subſtantive Noun* hath to be joined to an *Adjective* of ſuch a *Termination*, and not of another. Therefore,

Of Names of *Animals*, the *Hees* are of the Maſculine, and the *Shees* of the Feminine Gender: But of Things without Life, and where the Diverſity of Sex is not conſidered, even of Things that have Life, ſome are of the Maſculine, others of the Feminine, and others of the Neuter Gender, according to the Uſe of the beſt Authors of the *Latin* Tongue.

Beſides theſe three principal Genders, there are reckoned alſo other three leſs principal, which are nothing elſe but Compounds of the three former, *viz.* the Gender *Common to two*, the Gender *Common to three*, and the *Doubtful* Gender.

I. The *Common Gender*, or Gender common to two, [*Genus commune*, or *Commune duum*] is Maſculine and Feminine; and belongs to ſuch Nouns as agree to both Sexes; as, *Parens*, a Father or Mother; *Bos*, an Ox or Cow.

II. The *Gender common to three* [*Genus commune trium*] is Maſculine, Feminine, and Neuter, and belongs only to Adjectives: Whereof ſome have three Terminations, the firſt Maſculine, the ſecond Feminine, and the third Neuter; as, *Bonus*, *bona*, *bonum*, Good. Some have two, the firſt Maſculine and Feminine, and the ſecond Neuter; as, *Mollis*, *molle*, Soft.

And ſome have but one Termination, which agrees indifferently to any of the three Genders; as, *Prudens*, wiſe.

III. The *Doubtful Gender* [*Genus dubium*] belongs to ſuch Nouns as are found in good Authors, ſometimes in one Gender, and ſometimes in another; as, *Dies*, a Day, Maſc. or Fem. *Vulgus*, the Rabble, Maſc. or Neut.

[*We have excepted out of the Number of Genders the* Epicene *or* Promiſcuous Gender; *for properly ſpeaking, there is no ſuch Gender, diſtinct from the three chief ones, or the Doubtful. There are indeed* Epicene Nouns, *that is, ſome Names of Animals, in which the Diſtinction of Sex is either not at all, or very obſcurely conſidered; and theſe are generally of the Gender of their Termination, as* Aquila, *an Eagle, Femin. becauſe it ends in* a; Paſſer, *a Sparrow, Maſcul. becauſe it ends in* er. (See *p.* 16. and 19.) *So* Homo, *a Man or Woman, Maſc.* Mancipium, *a Slave, Neut.* Anguis, *a Serpent, Doubtful.*]

To diſtinguiſh theſe Genders we make Uſe of theſe three Words, *Hic, hæc, hoc*, which are commonly, though improperly, called *Articles*. *Hic* is the Sign of the Maſc. *hæc* of the Fem. *hoc* of the Neut. Gender; *Hic & hæc* of the Common to two; *hic, hæc, hoc* of the Common to three; *hic aut hæc; hic aut hoc*, &c. of the doubtful.

By *CASES* we underſtand the different Terminations that Nouns receive in declining: So called from *Cado* to fall, becauſe they naturally fall or flow from the Nominative, which is therefore called *Caſus rectus*, the ſtraight Caſe; as the other five are named *Obliqui*, crooked.

The *Singular NUMBER* denotes one ſingle Thing; as, *Homo*, a Man; the *Plural* denotes more Things than one; as, *Homines*, Men.

¶ Before the Learner proceeds to the Declenſion of Latin Nouns, it may not perhaps be improper to give him a general View of

The Declenſion *of* Engliſh Nouns.

I. The *Engliſh* Language hath the two *Genders* of Nature, *viz.* Maſculine and Feminine; for Animals in it are called *He* or *SHE*, according to the Difference of their Sex: And almoſt every Thing without Life is called IT. But becauſe all the Adjectives of this Language are of one Termination, it has no occaſion for any other Genders.

II. The *Engliſh*, properly ſpeaking, has no Caſes, becauſe there is no Alteration made in the Words themſelves, as in the Latin; but inſtead thereof we uſe ſome little Words called *PARTICLES*.

Thus, the *Nominative Caſe* is the ſimple Noun itſelf: The Particle *OF* put before it, or *'s* after it, makes the *Genitive*: *TO* or *FOR* before it makes the *Dative*: The *Accuſative* is the ſame with the *Nominative*: The *Vocative* hath *O* before it: And the *Ablative* hath *WITH, FROM, IN, BY*, &c.

Note, 1. That when a Subſtantive comes before a Verb, it is called the Nominative: when it follows after a Verb active, without a Prepoſition interveening, it is called the Accuſative.

Note, 2. That the Apoſtrophus or Sign ['] is not uſed in the Genitive Plural; as, *Mens Works, the Apoſtles Creed.*

Note, 3. That *TO* the Sign of the Dative, and *O* of the Vocative, are frequently omitted or underſtood.

Beſides theſe there are other two little Words called *ARTICLES*, which

Singular.

are commonly put before Substantive Nouns, *viz. A* [or *An* before a Vowel or *H*] called the *Indefinite Article*, and *THE* called the *Definite*.

A or *An* signifies as much as the Adjective *One*, and is put for it; as, *A Man*, that is, *One Man*. *The* is a Pronoun, and signifies almost the same with *This* or *That*, and *These* or *Those*.

NOTE, 1. That proper Names of Men, Women, Towns, Kingdoms, and Appellatives, when used in a very general Sense, have none of these Articles; as, *Man is mortal, i. e.* every Man: *God abhors Sin, i. e.* all Sins: But proper Names of Rivers, Ships, Hills, *&c.* frequently have *The*; as, *the Thames, the Britannia, the Alps*.

NOTE, 2. That the Vocative has none of these Articles, and the Plural wants the Indefinite.

NOTE, 3. That when an Adjective is joined with a Substantive, the Article is put before both: as, *A good Man, the good Man*: And the Definite is put before the Adjective when the Substantive is understood; as, *The just shall live by Faith*, i. e. *The just Man*.

III. The *English* hath two *Numbers*, as the Latin, and the Plural is commonly made by putting an *s* to the Singular; as, *Book, Books*.

Exc. 1. Such as end in *ch, sh, ss*, and *x*, which have *es* added to their Singular; as, *Church-es, Brush-es, Witness-es, Box-es*. Where it is to be noticed, that such Words have a Syllable more in the Plural than in the Singular Number: which likewise happens to all Words ending in *ce, ge, se, ze*; as, *Faces, Ages, Houses, Mazes*. The Reason of this proceeds from the near approach these Terminations have in their Sound to an *s*, so that their Plural could not be distinguished from the Sing. without the Addition of another Syllable. And, for the same Reason, Verbs of these Terminations have a Syllable added to them in their third Person Singular of the present Tense.

Exc. 2. Words that end in *f*, or *fe*, have their Plural in *ves*; as, *Calf, Calves; Leaf, Leaves; Wife, Wives*: But not always; for *Hoof, Roof, Grief, Mischief, Dwarf, Strife, Muff*, &c. retain *f*; *Staff* has *Staves*.

Exc. 3. Some have their Plural in *en*; as, *Man, Men; Woman, Women; Child, Children; Chick, Chicken; Brother, Brothers* or *Brethren* (which last is seldom used but in Sermons, or in a Burlesque Sense.)

Exc. 4. Some are more irregular; as, *Die, Dice; Mouse, Mice; Louse, Lice; Goose, Geese; Foot, Feet; Tooth, Teeth; Penny, Pence; Sow, Sows*, and *Swine; Cow, Cows*, and *Kine*.

Exc. 5. Some are the same in both Numbers; as, *Sheep, Hose, Swine, Chicken, Pease, Deer; Fish*, and *Fishes; Milk*, and *Males; Horse*, and *Horses*.

NOTE, That as Nouns in *y* do often change *y* into *ie*, so these have rather *ies* than *ys* in the Plural; as, *Cherry, Cherries*.

An *English Noun* is thus declined.

	A,	The		The
Singular.	Nom.	*King*,	Plural.	Nom. *Kings*,
	Gen. *of*	*King*,		Gen. *of* *Kings*,
	Dat. *to* [*for*]	*King*,		Dat. *to* [*for*] *Kings*,
	Acc.	*King*,		Acc. *Kings*,
	Voc. *O*	*King*,		Voc. *O* *Kings*,
	Abl. *with, from, in, by,*	*King*,		Abl. *with, from, in, by,* *Kings*.

Prima Declinatio.

M. QUomodo dignoſcitur Prima Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum & Dativum ſingularem in *æ* Diphthongon.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

D. Quatuor; *a, e, as, es*; ut,

The Firſt Declenſion.

M. HOW *is the Firſt Declenſion known?*

S. *By the Genitive and Dative Singular in æ Diphthong.*

M. *How many Terminations hath it?*

S. *Four*; a, e, as, es; *as*,

Penna, Penelope, Æneas, Anchiſes.

Penna, *a Pen*, Fem.

Sing.		*Plur.*		Terminations.
Nom. penna,	*a pen,*	*Nom.* pennæ,	*pens,*	*a, æ,*
Gen. pennæ,	*of a pen,*	*Gen.* pennarum,	*of pens,*	*æ, arum,*
Dat. pennæ,	*to a pen,*	*Dat.* pennis,	*to pens,*	*æ, is,*
Acc. pennam,	*a pen,*	*Acc.* pennas,	*pens,*	*am, as,*
Voc. penna,	*O pen,*	*Voc.* pennæ,	*O pens,*	*a, æ,*
Abl. penna,	*with a pen:*	*Abl.* pennis,	*with pens,*	*a: is.*

¶ After the ſame Manner you may decline *Litera*, a Letter; *Via*, a Way; *Galea*, an Helmet; *Tunica*, a Coat; *Toga*, a Gown.

A is a Latin Termination; *e*, *as*, and *es*, are Greek.

Nouns in *a* and *e* are Feminine, in *as* and *es* Maſculine.

RULE, *Filia*, a Daughter; *Nata*, a Daughter; *Dea*, a Goddeſs; *Anima*, the Soul, with ſome others, have more frequently *abus* than *is* in their Dat. and Abl. Plur. to diſtinguiſh them from Maſculines in *us* of the Second Declenſion.

¶ In declining *Greek Nouns* obſerve the following Rules.

1. Greek Nouns in *as* [and *a*] have ſometimes their Accuſative [with the Poets] in *an*; as, *Æneas*, *Æneam*, vel *Æneän*; [*Offa*, *Offam*, vel *Offan*.]

2. Theſe in *es* have their Accuſative in *en*, and their Vocative, and Ablative in *e*, as,

Nom. Anchiſes,		*Acc.* Anchiſen,	
Voc. Anchiſe,		*Abl.* Anchiſe.	

3. Nouns in *e* have their Genitive in *es*, their Accuſative in *en*, their Dative, Vocative, and Ablative in *e*; as,

Nom. Penelope,			
Dat. Penelope,		*Gen.* Penelopes,	
Voc. Penelope,		*Acc.* Penelopen.	
Abl. Penelope.			

[*As to the Dative of Words in* e, *I have followed* Probus *and* Priſcian, *among the Ancients*; Lilly, Alvarus, Voſſius, Meſſieurs de Port Royal, Johnſon, &c. *among the Moderns. And though none of them cite any Example, yet I remember to have obſerved three ſuch Datives*, viz. Cybelle *in* Virg. Æn. XI.

768. Penelope *in* Martial, Epig. XI. 8, 9. *and* Epigone *in* Reineſii Syntag. Inſcript. Claſſ. 14. Num. 85. *But* Diomedes *and* Deſpauter *ſeem to be of Opinion, that theſe Nouns have* æ *in their Dative. The Reaſon that moved the former is, becauſe they thought it incongruous, that ſeeing Nouns in* e *generally follow the Greek in all their other Caſes, they ſhould follow the Latin in their Dative only, eſpecially ſince their Ablative, which anſwers to the Greek Dative, ends in* e. *As, on the contrary, they maintain, that if ſuch Nouns have* æ *in their Dative, it muſt come from a Nominative in* a; *of which there are ſome Examples yet extant: And then they may likewiſe have their Accuſative in* am; *as,* Penelopam, Circam, *in* Plautus, Lycambam, *in* Terentianus Maurus. *Thus* Helenæ *or* Helenes, Helenam *or* Helenen, *are frequently to be met with in Poets; who alſo turn ſuch Words as commonly end in* a, *into* e *in the Nominative and Vocative, when the Meaſure of their Verſe requires it. And here it may not be improper to remark, that even Greek Words in* es *have ſometimes their Nominative and Vocative in* a, *(whence comes their Genitive and Dative in* æ:) *And, if Mr.* Johnſon's *Citations are right, both* es *and* e *have ſometimes their Accuſative in* em.]

Secunda Declinatio.

M. QUomodo dignoſcitur Secunda Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum ſingularem in *i*, & Dativum i *o*.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

D. Septem; *er, ir, ur, us, um, os, on*; ut,

The Second Declenſion.

M. HOW *is the Second Declenſion known?*

S. By the Genitive ſingular in i, *and Dative in* o.

M. How many Terminations hath it?

S. Seven; er, ir, ur, us, um, os, on; *as,*

Gener, a Son-in-law; *Vir*, a Man; *Satur*, full; *Dominus*, a Lord; *Regnum*, a Kingdom; *Synodos*, a Synod; *Albion*, the Iſland Albion, or Great-Britain.

Gener, *a Son-in-law*, Maſc.

Sing.	*Plur.*	Terminations.
Nom. gener,	*Nom.* generi,	*er, ir, us, i,*
Gen. generi,	*Gen.* generorum,	*i, orum,*
Dat. genero,	*Dat.* generis,	*o, is,*
Acc. generum,	*Acc.* generos,	*um, os,*
Voc. gener,	*Voc.* generi,	*er, ir, e, i,*
Abl. genero:	*Abl.* generis.	*o: is,*

After the ſame manner you may decline *Puer*, a Boy; *Socer*, a Father-in-law: *Vir*, a Man, *&c.* But *Liber*, a Book; *Magiſter*, a Maſter; *Alexander*, a Man's Name; and moſt other Subſtantives in *er*, loſe the *e* before *r*: Thus, *Sing. Nom.* Liber, *Gen.* libri, *Dat.* libro, *Acc.* librum, *Voc.* liber, *Abl.* libro: *Plur. Nom.* libri, *Gen.* librorum, *&c.*

Dominus, *a Lord*, Maſc.

Sing.	*Plur.*	*Thus,*
Nom. dominus,	*Nom.* domini,	Ventus, *the Wind.*
Gen. domini,	*Gen.* dominorum,	Oculus, *the Eye.*
Dat. domino,	*Dat.* dominis,	Fluvius, *a River.*
Acc. dominum,	*Acc.* dominos,	Puteus, *a Well.*
Voc. domine,	*Voc.* domini,	Focus, *a common Fire.*
Abl. domino:	*Abl.* dominis.	Rogus, a *funeral Pile.*

Regnum, *a Kingdom*, Neut.

Sing.	*Plur.*	*Thus,*
Nom. regnum,	*Nom.* regna,	Templum, *a Church.*
Gen. regni,	*Gen.* regnorum,	Ingenium, *Wit.*
Dat. regno,	*Dat.* regnis,	Horreum, *a Barn.*
Acc. regnum,	*Acc.* regna,	Canticum, *a Song.*
Voc. regnum,	*Voc.* regna,	Jugum, *a Yoke.*
Abl. regno:	*Abl.* regnis.	

REGULÆ.

I. Nominativus in *us* facit Vocativum in *e;* ut, *Ventus, vente.*

II. Propria in *ius* perdunt *us* in Vocativo; ut, *Georgius, Georgi.*

RULES.

I. *The Nominative in* us *makes the Vocative in* e; *as,* Ventus, vente.

II. *Proper Names in* ius *loſe* us *in the Vocative;* as, Georgius, Georgi.

Filius hath alſo *fili*, and *Deus* hath *Deus* in the Vocative, and in the Plural more frequently *Dii* and *Diis*, than *Dei* and *Deis.*

The moſt common Terminations of the Second Declenſion are *er* and *us* of the Maſc. and *um* of the Neut. Gender.

There is only one Noun in *ir* of this Declenſion, *viz. Vir*, a Man, with its Compounds, *Levir*, *Duumvir*, *Triumvir*, &c. and only one in *ur*, viz. *Satur*, full, (of old *Saturus*) an Adjective. *Os* and *on* are Greek Terminations, and generally changed into *us* and *um* in their Nominative. Theſe, with other Greek Nouns in *us*, have ſometimes their Acc. in *on*.

[We have excluded the Termination *eus* from this Declenſion, as belonging more properly to the Third; as, *Orpheus*, *Orpheos*, *Orphei*, *Orphea*, *Orpheu:* For when it is of the Second Declenſion, it is *e-us*, of two Syllables, and ſo falls under the Termination *us; Orphe-us*, *Orphe-i* (contracted *Orphei* and *Orphi*) *Orpheo*, *Orphe-um*, (or *Orpheon*) *Orphe-o.*]

Tertia Declinatio.

M. QUomodo dignoſcitur Tertia Declinatio?

The Third Declenſion.

M. HOW *is the Third Declenſion known?*

D. Per Genitivum singularem in *is*, & Dativum in *i*.

M. Quot habet Terminationes seu Syllabas finales?

D. Septuaginta & unam.

M. Quot habet literas finales?

D. Undecim; *a*, *e*, *o*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*; ut,

S. *By the Genitive Singular in* is, *and Dative in* i.

M. *How many Terminations or final Syllables hath it?*

S. *Seventy and one.*

M. *How many final Letters hath it?*

S. *Eleven;* a, e, o, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x; *as*,

Diadema, a Crown; *Sedile*, a Seat; *Sermo*, a Speech; *Lac*, Milk; *David*, a Man's Name; *Animal*, a living Creature; *Pecten*, a Comb; *Pater*, a Father; *Rupes*, a Rock; *Caput*, the Head; *Rex*, a King.

Sermo, *Speech*, Masc.

Sing.	*Plur.*	Terminations.
Nom. sermo,	*Nom.* sermones,	*a*, *e*, *o*, &c. *es*, *a*,
Gen. sermonis,	*Gen.* sermonum,	*is*, *um*, *ium*,
Dat. sermoni,	*Dat.* sermonibus,	*i*, *ibus*,
Acc. sermonem,	*Acc.* sermones,	*em*, *es*, *a*,
Voc. sermo,	*Voc.* sermones,	*a*, *e*, *o*, &c. *es*, *a*,
Acc. sermone:	*Acc.* sermonibus.	*e*, *i*: *ibus*.

Sedile, *a Seat*, Neut.

Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom. sedile,	*Nom.* sedilia,
Gen. sedilis,	*Gen.* sedilium,
Dat. sedili,	*Dat.* sedilibus,
Acc. sedile,	*Acc.* sedilia,
Voc. sedile,	*Voc.* sedilia,
Abl. sedili:	*Abl.* sedilibus.

As Sermo, *so most Substantives of this Declension in* a, o, c, d, n, t, x, er, or, ur, as, os, us; *(except their Acc. and Voc. when they are Neuters, or when they want the Plural Number.) Also (when they have more Syllables in their Gen. than Nom.) all Words in* es, *and most of those in* is.

Of the final Letters of the third Declension six are peculiar to it, *o*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *t*, *x*; the other five are common to other Declensions, *viz.* *a*, *e*, *n*, *r*, *s*.

The copious final Letters are, *o*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *x*.

The copious final Syllables are, *io*, *do*, *go*, *en*, *er*, *or*, *as*, *es*, *is*, *os*, *us*, *ns*, *rs*, *ex*.

All Nouns in *a* of this Declension are originally Greek, and have always an *m* before it. There are only two Words in *c*; *Lac*, Milk; and *Halec*, a Herring. Words in *d* are proper Names of Men, and very rare. There are only three Words in *t*, viz. *Caput*, the Head; *Sinciput*, the Forehead; *Occiput*, the Hind-head.

1. The Terminations *er*, *or*, *os*, *o*, *n*,
2. The Terminations *io*, *do*, *go*, *as*, *es*, *is*, *ys*, *aus*, *x*, and *s* after a Consonant,
3. The Terminations *a*, *c*, *e*, *l*, *men*, *ar*, *ur*, *us*, *ut*,

} are { Masculine. Feminine. Neuter.

But from these there are many Exceptions.

NOTE, 1. That for the moſt part the Genitive hath a Syllable more than the Nominative; and where it is otherwiſe they generally end in *e*, *es*, or *is*.

NOTE, 2. That whatever Letter or Syllable comes before *is* in the Gen. muſt run through the other Caſes (except the Acc. and Voc. Sing. of Neuters; as, *Thema*, *-atis*, *-ati*, *-ate*, a Theme; *Sanguinis*, *-guinis*, Blood; *Iter*, *-tineris*, a Journey; *Carmen*, *-minis*, a Verſe; *Judex*, *-dicis*, a Judge.

REGULÆ.

1. Nomina in *e*, & Neutra in *al* & *ar*, habent *i* in Ablativo.

2. Quæ habent *e* tantùm in Ablativo, faciunt Genitivum pluralem in *um*.

3. Quæ habent *i* tantùm, vel *e* aut *i* ſimul, faciunt *ium*.

4. Neutra quæ habent *e* in Ablativo ſingulari, habent *a* in Nominativo, Accuſativo, & Voccativo plurali.

5. At quæ habent *i* in Ablativo, faciunt *ia*.

RULES.

1. *Nouns in* e, *and Neuters in* al *and* ar, *have* i *in the Ablative.*

2. *Theſe which have* e *only in the Ablative, make their Genitive plural in* um.

3. *Theſe which have* i *only, or* e *and* i *together, make* ium.

4. *Neuters which have* e *in their Ablative ſing. have* a *in the Nominative, Accuſative, and Vocative plural.*

5. *But theſe which have* i *in the Ablative, make* ia.

---

1. EXCEPTIONS in the Accuſative ſingular.

1. Some Nouns in *is* have *im* in the Accuſative; as, *Vis*, *vim*, Strength; *Tuſſis*, the Cough; *Sitis*, Thirſt; *Buris*, the Beam of a Plough; *Ravis*, Hoarſeneſs; *Amuſſis*, a Maſon's Rule. To which add Names of Rivers in *is*; as, *Tybris*, *Thameſis*, which the Poets ſometimes make in *in*.

2. Some in *is* have *em* or *im*; as, *Navis*, a Ship; *Puppis*, the Stern; *Securis*, a Ax; *Clavis*, a Key; *Febris*, a Fever; *Pelvis*, a Baſon; *Reſtis*, a Rope; *Turris*, a Tower; *Navem* vel *navim*, &c.

2. EXCEPTIONS in the Ablative ſingular.

1. Nouns which have *im* in the Accuſative have i in the Ablative; as, *vis*, *vim*, *vi*, &c. Theſe that have *em* or *im* have *e* or *i*; as, *Navis*, *navem* vel *navim*, *nave* vel *navi*.

2. *Canalis*, *Vectis*, *Bipennis* have *i*: *Avis*, *Amnis*, *Ignis*, *Unguis*, *Rus*, and *Imber*, with ſome others, have *e* or *i*; but moſt commonly *e*.

Theſe Neuters in *ar* have *e*; *Far*, *Jubar*, *Nectar*, and *Hepar*; *Sal* alſo has *ſale*.

3. EXCEPTIONS in the Genitive plural.

1. Nouns of one Syllable in *as*, *is*, and *s*, with a Conſonant before it, have *ium*; as, *As*, *aſſium*; *Lis*, *litium*; *Urbs*, *urbium*.

2. Alſo Nouns in *es* and *is*, not increaſing in their Genitive; as, *Vallis*, *vallium*; *Rupes*, *rupium*. Except, *Panis*, *Canis*, *Vates*, and *Volucris*.

3. To which add *Caro*, *Cor*, *Cos*, *Dos*, *Mus*, *Nix*, *Nox*, *Linter*, *Sal*, *Os*, *aſſis*.

NOTE, That when the Genitive plural ends in *ium*, the Accuſative frequently, inſtead of *es*, has *eis* or *is*; as, *omneis*, *parteis*, or *omnis*, *partis*, for *omnes*, *partes*.

Of Greek Nouns.

I. Greek Nouns have ſometimes their Genitive in *os*. And theſe are, 1. Such as increaſe their Genitive with *d*; as, *Arcas*, *Arcadis* vel *Arcados*, an Arcadian; *Briſeis*, *-eidis* vel *-eidos*, a Woman's Name. 2. Such as increaſe in *os* pure, *i. e.* with a Vowel before it: as, *Hereſis*, *-eos* vel *-ios*, an Hereſy. 3. To theſe add *Sphyngos*, *Strymonos*, and *Panos*.

NOTE, That *is* is more frequent, except in the ſecond Kind, and Patronymicks of the firſt.

II. 1. Greek words which increaſe their Genitive in *is* or *os* not pure, (*i. e.* with a Conſonant before it) have frequently their Accuſative ſing. in *a*, and plur. in *as*; as, *Lampas*, *lampadis*, *lampada*, *lampadas*; alſo *Minos*, *Minois*, *Minoa*; *Tros*, *Troïs*, *Troa*, *Troas*; *Heros*, *herois*, *heroa*, *heroas*.

2. Words in *is* or *ys*, whoſe Genitive ends in *os* pure, have their Accuſative in *im* or *in*, and *ym* or *yn*; as, *Hæreſis*, *-eos*, *hæreſim* or *-in*, *Chelys*, *-lyos*, a Lute; *chelym* or *-lyn*. Of Words in *is*, which have their Genitive in *dis* or *dos*, *Maſculines* have their Accuſative for the moſt part in *im* or *in*, ſeldom in *dem*, and never in *da*, that I know of: as, *Paris*, *Parim* vel *Parin*, vel *Paridem*; *Feminines* have moſt commonly *dem* or *da*, and ſeldom *im* or *in*; as, *Briſeis*, *Briſeidem* vel *Briſeida*.

III. Feminines in *o* have *us* in their Genitive, and *o* in their other Caſes, as, *Dido*, *Didus*, *Dido*, &c. or they may be declined after the Latin form, *Didonis*, *Didoni*, &c. which *Juno* (as being of a Latin original) always follows.

IV. Greek Nouns in *s* frequently throw away *s* in their Vocative; as, *Calchas*, *Achilles*, *Paris*, *Typhys*, *Orpheus*; *Calcha*, *Achille*, *Pari*, *Typhy*, *Orpheu*.

V. Greek Nouns have *um*, (and ſometimes *on* in their Genitive plural; as, *Epigrammaton*, *Hæreſeon*) and very rarely *ium*.

VI. Greek Nouns in *ma* have moſt frequently *is* in their Dative and Ablative plural; as, *Poema*, *Poematis*, becauſe of old they ſaid *Poematum*, *-ti*, *Bos* has *boum*, and *bobus* or *bubus*.

Quarta Declinatio.

M. QUomodo dignoſcitur Quarta Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum ſingularem in *us*, & Dativum in *ui*.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

D. Duas; *us* & *u*; ut,

The Fourth Declenſion.

M. *HOW is the Fourth Declenſion known?*

S. *By the Genitive Singular in* us, *and the Dative in* ui.

M. *How many Terminations hath it?*

S. *Two:* us *and* u; *as*,

Fructus, *Fruit*; Cornu, *an Horn*.

	Fructus, *Fruit*, Maſc.		Terminations.	
Sing.	*Nom.* fructus,	*Plur.* *Nom.* fructus,	*us*,	*us*,
	Gen. fructus,	*Gen.* fructuum,	*us*,	*uum*,
	Dat. fructui,	*Dat.* fructibus,	*ui*,	*ibus*,
	Acc. fructum,	*Acc.* fructus,	*um*,	*us*,
	Voc. fructus,	*Voc.* fructus,	*us*,	*us*,
	Abl. fructu:	*Abl.* fructibus.	*u*:	*ibus*.

Cornu, *an Horn*, Neut.

Sing.	*Nom.* cornu,	*Plur.*	*Nom.* cornua,
	Gen. cornu,		*Gen.* cornuum,
	Dat. cornu,		*Dat.* cornibus,
	Acc. cornu,		*Acc.* cornua,
	Voc. cornu,		*Voc.* cornua,
	Abl. cornu:		*Abl.* cornibus.

As Fructus, *ſo* Vultus, *the Countenance;* Manus, *the Hand*, Fem. Caſus, *a Fall or Chance.*

As Cornu, *ſo* Genu, *the Knee;* Veru, *a Spit;* Tonitru, *Thunder.*

Nouns in *us* of this Declenſion are generally Maſculine, and theſe in *u* all Neuter, and indeclinable in the ſingular Number.

RULE, Some Nouns have *ubus* in their Dative and Ablative Plural, *viz.* *Arcus*, a Bow; *Artus*, a Joint; *Lacus*, a Lake; *Acus*, a Needle; *Portus*, a Port or Harbour; *Partus*, a Birth; *Tribus*, a Tribe; *Veru*, a Spit.

NOTE, That of old, Nouns of this Declenſion belonged to the Third, and were declined as *Grus, gruis*, a Crane; thus, *Fructus, fructuis, fructui, fructuem, fructue: Fructues, fructuum, fructuibus, fructues, fructues, fructuibus.* So that all the Caſes are contracted, except the Dative ſing. and Genitive plur. There are ſome Examples of the Genitive in *uis* yet extant; as, on the contrary, there are ſeveral of the Dative in *u*.

The bleſſed Name JESUS *is thus declined,*

Sing.	*Nom.* IESUS,	*Plur. wanting.*	
	Gen. IESU,		
	Dat. IESU,		
	Acc. IESUM,		
	Voc. IESU,		
	Abl. IESU,		

Domus, an Houſe, Fem. *is thus declined;*

Sing.		*Plur.*	
Nom.	domus,	*Nom.*	domus,
Gen.	domus, *v.*-mi,	*Gen.*	domorum, *v.*-um,
Dat.	domui, *v.*-mo,	*Dat.*	domibus,
Acc.	domum,	*Acc.*	domos, *v.* us,
Voc.	domus,	*Voc.*	domus,
Abl.	domo:	*Abl.*	domibus.

[NOTE, *That the Genitive* domi *is only uſed when it ſignifies*, At home; domo *the Dative is found in* Horace, Epiſt. I. 10, 13.]

Quinta Declinatio.

M. QUomodo dignoſcitur Quinta Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum & Dativum ſingularem in *ei*.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

D. Unam, nempe, *es*; ut,

The Fifth Declenſion.

M. *HOW is the Fifth Declenſion known?*

S. *By the Genitive and Dative Singular in* ei.

M. *How many Terminations hath it?*

S. *One; namely*, es; *as*,

Res, *a Thing*, Fem.

				Terminations.	
Sing.	*Nom.* res,	*Plur.*	*Nom.* res,	*es*,	*es*,
	Gen. rei,		*Gen.* rerum,	*ei*,	*erum*,
	Dat. rei,		*Dat.* rebus,	*ei*,	*ebus*,
	Acc. rem,		*Acc.* res,	*em*,	*es*,
	Voc. res,		*Voc.* res,	*es*,	*es*,
	Abl. re:		*Abl.* rebus.	*e*:	*ebus*.

Nouns of the Fifth Declenſion are not above fifty, and are all Feminine, except *Dies*, a Day, Maſc. or Fem. and *Meridies*, the Mid-day or Noon, Maſc.

All Nouns of this Declenſion end in *ies*, except three, *Fides*, Faith; *Spes*, Hope; *Res*, a Thing.

And all Nouns in *ies* are of the Fifth, except theſe four; *Abies*, a Fir-tree; *Aries*, a Ram; *Paries*, a Wall; and *Quies*, Reſt; which are of the Third.

Moſt Nouns of this Declenſion want the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative plural; and many of them want the Plural altogether.

General Remarks on all the Declenſions.

1. The Genitive Plural of the firſt Four is ſometimes contracted, eſpecially by Poets; as, *Cœlicolum*, *Deum*, *Menſum*, *Currum*; for *Cœlicolarum*, *Deorum*, *Menſium*, *Curruum*.

2. When the Genitive of the Second ends in *ii*, the laſt *i* is ſometimes taken away by Poets; as, *Tiguri* for *Tigurii*. We read alſo *Aulai* for *Aulæ* in the Firſt, and *Fide*, for *Fidei* in the Fifth; and ſo of other like Words.

Declinatio Adjectivorum.

ADjectiva ſunt vel primæ & ſecundæ Declinationis, vel tertiæ tantùm.

Omnia Adjectiva habentia tres Terminationes (præter (*a*) undecim) ſunt primæ & ſecundæ: At quæ unam vel duas Terminationes habent, ſunt tertiæ.

Adjectiva primæ & ſecundæ habent Maſculinum in *us*, (*b*) vel *er*; Fœmininum ſemper in *a*, Neutrum ſemper in *um*; ut,

The Declenſion of Adjectives.

ADjectives are either of the Firſt and Second Declenſion, or of the Third only.

All Adjectives having three Terminations (*except* (a) *eleven*) *are of the Firſt and Second: But theſe which have one or two Terminations are of the Third.*

Adjectives of the Firſt and Second have their Maſculine in us, (b) *or* er; *their Feminine always in* a, *and their Neuter always in* um; *as*,

Bonus, *bona*, *bonum*, good; *Tener*, *tenera*, *tenerum*, tender.

Bonus, bona, bonum, *good*.

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
Nom.	bon-us,	-a,	-um,	*Nom.*	bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
Gen.	bon-i,	-æ,	-i,	*Gen.*	bon-orum,	-arum,	-orum,
Dat.	bon-o,	-æ,	-o,	*Dat.*	bon-is,	-is,	-is,
Acc.	bon-um,	-am,	-um,	*Acc.*	bon-os,	-as,	-a,
Voc.	bon-e,	-a,	-um,	*Voc.*	bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
Abl.	bon-o,	-a,	-o:	*Abl.*	bon-is,	-is,	-is.

(a) Viz. *acer*, *alacer*, *celer*, *celeber*, *ſaluber*, *volucer*, *campeſter*, *equeſter*, *pedeſter*, *paluſter*, *ſilveſter*; which are of the Third, and have their Maſculine in *er* or *is*, their Feminine in *is*, and Neuter in *e*.

(*b*) For *ſatur*, full, was of old, *ſaturus*.

Tener, tenera, tenerum, *tender*.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
N. ten-er,	-era,	-erum,	*N.* ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
G. ten-eri,	-eræ,	-eri,	*G.* ten-erorum,	-erarum,	-erorum,
D. ten-ero,	-eræ,	-ero,	*D.* ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris,
A. ten-erum,	-eram,	-erum,	*A.* ten-eros,	-eras,	-era,
V. ten-er,	-era,	-erum,	*V.* ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
A. ten-ero,	-era,	-ero:	*A.* ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris.

Adjectives are declined as three Substantives of the same Terminations and Declensions: As in the Examples above, *bonus*, like *dominus; tener*, like *gener; bona* and *tenera*, like *penna; bonum* and *tenerum*, like *regnum*. Therefore the Ancients, as is clear from *Varro*, lib. 3 *de Anal.* declined every Gender separately, and not all three jointly, as we now commonly do: And perhaps it may not be amiss to follow this Method at first, especially if the Boy is of a slow Capacity.

Of Adjectives in *er*, some retain the *e*, as *tener*. So *miser, -era, -erum*, wretched; *liber, -era, -erum*, free; and all Compounds in *ger* and *fer*. Others lose it; as, *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum*, fair; *niger, -gra, -grum*, black.

These following Adjectives, *unus*, one; *totus*, whole; *solus*, alone; *ullus*, any; *nullus*, none; *alius*, another of many; *alter*, another, or one of two; *neuter*, neither; *uter*, whether, with its Compounds, *uterque*, both; *uterlibet, utervis*, which of the two you please; *alteruter*, the one or the other; have their Genitive singular in *ius* and Dative in *i*.

Adjectiva Tertia Declinationis.

1. *Unius Terminationis.*

Adjectives of the Third Declension.

1. Of one Termination.

Felix, *happy*.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
N. fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	*N.* fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
G. fel-icis,	-icis,	-icis,	*G.* fel-icium,	-icium,	-icium,
D. fel-ici,	-ici,	-ici,	*D.* fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus,
A. fel-icem,	-icem,	-ix,	*A.* fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
V. fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	*V.* fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
A. fel-ice, *vel* -ici, *&c.*			*A.* fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus.

2. *Duarum Terminationum.*

2. Of two Terminations.

Mitis, mite, *meek*.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
N. mitis,	mitis,	mite,	*N.* mites,	mites,	mitia,
G. mitis,	mitis,	mitis,	*G.* mitium,	mitium,	mitium,
D. miti,	miti,	miti,	*D.* mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus,
A. mitem,	mitem,	mite,	*A.* mites,	mites,	mitia,
V. mitis,	mitis,	mite,	*V.* mites,	mites,	mitia,
A. miti,	miti,	miti:	*A.* mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus.

Mitior, mitius, *meeker.*

Sing.			*Plur.*		
N. miti-or,	-or,	-us,	*N.* miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
G. miti-oris,	-oris,	-oris,	*G.* miti-orum,	-orum	-orum,
D. miti-ori,	-ori,	-ori,	*D.* miti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus,
A. miti-orem,	-orem,	-us,	*A.* miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
V. miti-or,	-or,	-us,	*V.* miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
A. miti-ore, *vel*	-ori, *&c.*		*A.* miti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus.

3. *Trium Terminationum.* 3. Of three Terminations.

Acer *vel* acris, acris, acre, *Sharp.*

Sing.			*Plur.*		
N. a-cer *vel*	-cris,	-cre,	*N.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
G. a-cris,	-cris,	-cris,	*G.* a-crium,	-crium,	-crium,
D. a-cri,	-cri,	-cri,	*D.* a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus,
A. a-crem,	-crem,	-cre,	*A.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
V. a-cer *vel*	-cris,	-cre,	*V.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
A. a-cri,	-cri,	-cri:	*A.* a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus.

REGULÆ.

1. Adjectiva tertiæ Declinationis habent *e* vel *i* in Ablativo singulari.

2. At si Neutrum sit in *e*, Ablativus habet *i* tantùm.

3. Genitivus pluralis definit in *ium*; & Neutrum Nominativi, Accusativi, et Vocativi, in *ia*.

4. Excipe Comparativa, quæ *um* & *a* postulant.

RULES.

1. *Adjectives of the Third Declension have* e *or* i *in the Ablative singular.*

2. *But if the Neuter be in* e, *the Ablative has* i *only.*

3. *The Genitive plural ends in* ium; *and the Neuter of the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative in* ia.

4. *Except Comparatives, which require* um *and* a.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Dives, Hospes, Sospes, Superstes, Juvenis, Senex,* and *Pauper* have *e* in the Ablative singular, and consequently *um* in the Genitive plural.

2. *Compos, Impos, Consors, Inops, Vigil, Supplex, Uber, Degener,* and *Puber;* also Compounds ending in *ceps, fex, pes,* and *corpor;* as, *Princeps, Artifex, Bipès, Tricorpor,* have *um,* not *ium.*

NOTE, That all these have seldom the Neut. sing. and never almost the Neut. plur. in the Nom. and Acc. To which add *Memor,* which has *memori* and *memorum;* and *Locuples,* which has *locupletium;* also, *Desses, Reses, Hebes, Perpes, Præpes, Teres, Concolor, Versicolor;* which being hardly to be met with in the Genitive plural, 'tis a Doubt whether they should have *um* or *ium,* though I incline most to the former.

3. *Par* has *pari; vetus, vetera* & *veterum; Plus*, (which hath only the Neut. in the ſing.) has *plure*, and *plures, plura* (or *pluria*) *plurium*.

NOTE, 1. That Comparatives and Adjectives in *ns*, have more frequently *e* than *i*; and Participles in the Ablatives called *Abſolute* have always *e*; as, *Carolo regnante*, not *regnanti*.

NOTE, 2. That Adjectives joined with Subſtantives Neuter, hardly ever have *e* but *i*; as, *victrici ferro*, not *victrice*.

NOTE, 3. That Adjectives when they are put Subſtantively, have oftimes *e*; as, *Affinis, Familiaris, Rivalis, Sodalis*, &c. So *Par*, a Match; as, *Cum pare quæque ſuo coeunt*. Ovid.

Of NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

1. THE *Ordinal* and *Multiplicative* Numbers (ſee Chap. IX.) are regularly declined. The *Diſtributive* wants the Singular, as alſo doth the *Cardinal*, except *Unus*, which is declined as in *p.* 24. and hath the Plural, when joined with a Subſtantive that wanteth the Sing. as, *Unæ literæ*, one Letter; *Una mœnia*, one Wall; or when ſeveral Particulars are conſidered complexly as making one Compound; as, *Uni ſex dies, i. e.* One Space of ſix Days; *Una veſtimenta, i. e* One Suit of Apparel, *Plaut.*

Duo and *tres* are declined after this Manner:

Plur.	*Nom.* duo,	duæ,	duo,	*Plur.*	*Nom.* tres,	tres,	tria,
	Gen. duorum,	duarum,	duorum,		*Gen.* trium,	trium,	trium,
	Dat. duobus,	duabus,	duobus,		*Dat.* tribus,	tribus,	tribus,
	Acc. duos *vel* -o,	duas,	duo,		*Acc.* tres,	tres,	tria,
	Voc. duo,	duæ,	duo,		*Voc.* tres,	tres,	tria,
	Abl. duobus,	duabus,	duobus.		*Abl.* tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

Ambo, both, is declined as *Duo*.

2. From *Quatuor* to *Centum* all are indeclinable.

3. From *Centum* to *Mille* they are declined thus, *Ducenti, ducenta, ducenta; ducentorum, ducentarum, ducentorum*, &c.

4. As to *Mille, Varro*, and all the Grammarians after him, down to the laſt Age, make it (when it is put before a Gen. plur.) a Subſtantive indeclinable in the Sing. and in the Plur. declined, *Millia, millium, millibus;* but when it hath a Subſtantive joined to it in any other Caſe, they make it an Adjective plural indeclinable. But *Scioppius*, and after him *Gronovius*, contend that *Mille* is always an Adjective plural; and under that Termination of all Caſes and Genders; but that it hath two Neuters, *hæc Mille*, and *hæc Millia*, that the firſt is uſed when one thouſand is ſignified, and the ſecond when more than one. And that where it ſeems to be a Subſtantive governing a Gen. *Multitudo, Numerus, Manus, Pecunia, Pondus, Spatium, Corpus*, or the like are underſtood. I own that formerly I was of this Sentiment; but now the weighty Reaſons adduced by the moſt accurate *Perizonius* incline me rather to follow the ancient Grammarians.

After the Declenſion of Subſtantives and Adjectives ſeparately, it may not be improper to exerciſe the Learner with ſome Examples of a Subſtantive and Adjective declined together; which will both make him more ready in the Declenſions, and render the Dependance of the Adjective upon the Subſtantive more familiar to him. Let the Examples at firſt be of the ſame Terminations and Declenſions; as, Dominus juſtus, *a juſt Lord;* Penna bona, *a good Pen;* Ingenium eximium, *an excellent Wit. Afterwards let them be different in one or both; as*, Puer probus, *a good Boy;* Lectio facilis, *an eaſy Leſſon;* Poeta optimus, *an excellent Poet;* Fructus dulcis, *ſweet Fruit;* Dies Fauſtus, *a happy Day*, &c. *and if the Boy has as yet been taught Writing, let him write them either in the School, or at home, to be reviſed by the Maſter next Day.*

Of IRREGULAR NOUNS.

THESE (for we cannot here make a full Enumeration of them) may be reduced to the following Scheme:

IRREGULAR NOUNS are,

1. DEFECTIVE.
   1. Substantives. Wanting
      1. *Number*, { Sing. as, *Liberi*, *Minæ*, *Arma*. / Plur. as, *Aer*, *Humus*, *Ævum*.
      2. *Cases*, { Nom. and Voc. Sing. as *Ditionis*. / Gen. Sing. as *Chaos*. / Dat. Sing. as *Plus*. / Voc. Sing. as *Ego*. / Gen. Dat. and Abl. Plur. as, *Mel*.
   - or having only { Three; as, *Dica*, *dicam*, *dicas*. / Two; as, *Suppetiæ*, *Suppetias*. / One; as, *Dicis*, *Inficias*, *Noctu*.
   2. Adjectives. Wanting
      1. *Gender*, { Masc. as, *Cætera*, *cæterum*. / Fem. as, *Quisquis*, *quicquid*. / Neut. as, *Compos*. / Masc. and Fem. as, *Plus*. / Masc. and Neut. as, *Sicelis* / Fem. and Neut. as, *Tros*.
      2. *Number*, { Plur. as, *Unusquisque*. / Sing. as, *Centum*.
      3. *Case*, { Voc. as, *Nullus*. / Dat. and Abl. as, *Tantundem*.
   - or having the Voc. only; as, *Macte*, *Macti*.
2. VARIABLE.
   1. Too much,
      In *Gender* having *Sing.* and *Plur.*: Masc. / Masc. Fem. / Neut. / Neut. / Neut. — { Neut. as, *Mænalus*, *Mænala*. / Masc. & Neut. as, *Locus*, *-ci*, and *-ca*. / Neut. as, *Carbasus*, *carbasa*. / Masc. as, *Cœlum*, *cœli*. / Fem. as, *Epulum*, *epulæ*. / Masc & Neut. as, *Frenum*, *-ni* & *-na*.
      In *Declension* being of the { 2. and 1. as, *Delicium*, *deliciæ*. / 2. and 4. as, *Laurus*, *-ri*, and *-rus*. / 3. and 2. as, *Vas*, *-sis*; *-sa*, *-sorum*.
   2. Too little, as, *Indeclinabiles*, { altogether; as, *Fas*. / in the Sing. as, *Cornu*.
3. REDUNDANT.
   - In *Termination* - { only; as, *Helena*, *Helene*. / and Gender; as *Tignus*, *tignum*. / and Decl. as, *Materia*, *materies*. / Gend. and Decl. as, *Æther*, *æthra*.
   - In *Gender* - - only; as, *hic & hoc Vulgus*.
   - In *Declension* - - { only; as, *Fames*, *famis* of the 3d, Abl. *fame*, of the 5th, because the last Syllable is always long with the Poets.

NOTE, 1. That the *Defective* Nouns are not ſo numerous as is commonly believed.

NOTE, 2. That theſe which *vary too little*, may be ranked under the *Defective*, and theſe which *vary too much*, under the *Redundant*, E. G. *Cœli, cœlorum*, comes not from *Cœlum*, but from *Cœlus;* and *Vaſa, Vaſorum*, not from *Vas, Vaſis*, but from *Vaſum, Vaſi:* But Cuſtom, which alone gives laws to all Languages, has dropt the Singular, and retained the Plural; and ſo of others.

De Comparatione.

M. QUOT ſunt Gradus Comparationis?

D. Tres; *Poſitivus, Comparativus*, & *Superlativus.*

M. Quotæ Declinationis ſunt hi Gradus?

D. Poſitivus eſt Adjectivum Primæ & Secundæ Declinationis, vel Tertiæ tantûm; Comparativus eſt ſemper Tertiæ; Superlativus ſemper Primæ & Secundæ.

M. Unde formatur Comparativus Gradus?

D. A proximo caſu Poſitivi in *i*, addendo pro Maſculino & Fœminino ſyllabam *or*, & *us* pro Neutro; ut,

Of Compariſon.

M. *HOW many Degrees of Compariſon are there?*

S. *Three; the* Poſitive, Comparative, *and* Superlative.

M. *Of what Declenſion are theſe Degrees?*

S. *The Poſitive is an Adjective of the Firſt and Second Declenſion, or Third only; the Comparative is always of the Third; the Superlative always of the Firſt and Second.*

M. *Whence is the Comparative Degree formed?*

S. *From the next Caſe of the Poſitive in* i, *by adding for the Maſculine and Feminine the Syllable* or, *and* us *for the Neuter; as,*

Doctus, learned, Gen. *docti, doctior*, & *doctius*, more learned; *Mitis*, meek, Dat. *miti, mitior*, & *mitius*, more meek.

M. Unde formatur Superlativus?

D. 1. Si Poſitivus deſinat in *er*, Superlativus formatur addendo *rimus;* ut,

M. *Whence is the Superlative formed?*

S. 1. *If the Poſitive ends in* er, *the Superlative is formed by adding* rimus; *as,*

Pulcher, fair, *pulcherrimus*, moſt fair; *Pauper*, poor, *pauperrimus*, moſt poor.

2. Si Poſitivus non deſinat in *er*, Superlativus formatur à proximo caſu in *i*, addendo *ſſimus;* ut,

2. *If the Poſitive ends not in* er, *the Superlative is formed from the next Caſe in* i, *by adding* ſſimus; as,

Gen. *Docti*, *Doctiſſimus*, moſt learned: Dat. *Miti*, *mitiſſimus*, moſt meek.

By Grammatical COMPARISON we underſtand three Adjective Nouns, which the two laſt are formed from the firſt, and import Compariſon with it, that is, Heightening or Leſſening of its Signification.

Conſequently theſe Adjectives only which are capable of having their ſignification increaſed or diminiſhed, can be compared.

The POSITIVE ſignifies the Quality of a Thing ſimply and abſolutely; as, *Durus*, hard; *Parvus*, little.

The COMPARATIVE heightens or leſſens that Quality; as, *Durior*, harder; *Minor*, leſs.

The SUPERLATIVE heightens or leſſens it to a very high or very low Degree; as, *Duriſſimus*, hardeſt, *or* moſt hard; *Minimus*, very little, *or* leaſt.

The Poſitive hath various Terminations; the Comparative ends always in *or* and *us*: the Superlative always in *mus*, *ma*, *mum*.

[*The Poſitive, properly ſpeaking, is no Degree of Compariſon, for it does not compare Things together: However, it is accounted one, becauſe the other two are founded upon and formed from it.*]

The SIGN of the Comparative in our Language is the Syllable *er*, added to an Adjective, or the Word *more* put before it.

The SIGN of the Superlative is the Syllable *eſt* added to an Adjective, or the Words *very* or *moſt* put before it.

NOTE, That when the Poſitive is a long Word, or would otherwiſe ſound harſh by having *er* or *eſt* added to it, we commonly make the Comparative by the Word *more*, and the Superlative by *moſt* or *very* put before it.

And, for the like Reaſon, the Latin Comparative is ſometimes made by *Magis*, and the Superlative by *Valde* or *Maxime*, put before the Poſitive. And theſe are particularly uſed, when the Poſitive ends in *us* with a Vowel before it; as, *Pius*, godly; *Arduus*, high; *Idoneus*, fit; tho' not always.

IRREGULAR COMPARISONS.

1. Bonus,	melior,	optimus:	*Good, better, beſt.*
Malus,	pejor,	peſſimus:	*Evil, worſe, worſt.*
Magnus,	major,	maximus:	*Great, greater, greateſt.*
Parvus,	minor,	minimus:	*Little, leſs, leaſt.*

Multus, plurimus; multa, plurima; multum, plus, plurimum: *much, more, moſt.*

2. Facilis, *eaſy;* Humilis, *low;* Similis, *like;* make their Superlative by changing *is* into *limus;* thus, *facillimus*, *humillimus*, *ſimillimus*.

3. *Exter*, outward; *Citer*, hither; *Superus*, above; *Inferus*, below; *Poſterus*, behind; have regular Comparatives; but their Superlatives are *extremus* (or *extimus*,) uttermoſt; *citimus*, hithermoſt; *ſupremus* (or *ſummus*,) uppermoſt, higheſt, laſt; *infimus* (or *imus*,) loweſt; *poſtremus* (or *poſtumus*,) lateſt or laſt.

4. Compounds in *Dicus*, *Loquus*, *Ficus*, and *Volus*, have *entior* and *entiſſimus;* as, *Maledicus*, one that raileth; *Magniloquus*, one that boaſteth; *Beneficus*, beneficent; *Malevolus*, malevolent. But theſe ſeem rather to come from Participles or Nouns in *ens*. Beſides the Comparatives and Superlatives of Adjectives derived from *Loquor* and *Facio* are very rare; and *Terence* has *Muriſiciſſimus*, and *Plautus* has *Mendaciloquius*.

5. *Prior*, former, has *Primus*, firſt; *Ulterior*, farther; *Ultimus*, fartheſt, or laſt; *Proprior*, nearer; *Proximus*, neareſt, *or* next; *Ocior*, ſwifter, *Ociſſi-*

mus, ſwifteſt; their Poſitives being out of Uſe, or quite wanting. *Proximus* has another Comparative formed from it, *viz. Proximior.*

6. There are alſo a great many other Adjectives capable of having their Signification increaſed, which yet want one, or more of theſe Degrees of Compariſon; as, *Albus*, white, without Compar. and Superl. *Ingens*, great, *Ingentior*, greater, without the Superl. *Sacer*, holy, *Sacerrimus*, moſt holy, without the Compar. *Anterior*, former, without Poſit. and Superl.

¶ *Theſe three Degrees of Compariſon, being nothing elſe but three diſtinct Adjectives, may be declined either ſeverally each by itſelf, or jointly altogether; Reſpect ſtill being had to their Declenſions. But the firſt way is much eaſier, and will anſwer all the Purpoſes of Compariſon as well as the other.*

CAP. II.

De Pronomine.

M. QUOT ſunt Pronomina † ſimplicia?

D. Octodecim; *Ego, Tu, Sui, Ille, Ipſe, Iſte, Hic, Is, Quis, Qui; Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noſter, Veſter; Noſtras, Veſtras,* & *Cujas.*

¶ Ex his tria ſunt Subſtantiva, *Ego, Tu, Sui;* reliqua quindecim ſunt Adjectiva.

CHAP. II.

Of PRONOUN.

M. HOW *many* † *ſimple Pronouns are there?*

S. *Eighteen;* Ego, Tu, Sui; Ille, Ipſe, Iſte, Hic, Is, Quis, Qui; Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noſter, Veſter; Noſtras, Veſtras, *and* Cujas.

¶ *Of theſe three are Subſtantives,* Ego, Tu, Sui; *the other fifteen are Adjectives.*

Ego, *I.*

Sing.	*Nom.* ego, *I,*	*Plur.*	*Nom.* nos, *we,*
	Gen. mei, *of me,*		*Gen.* noſtrum *vel* noſtri, *of us.*
	Dat. mihi, *to me,*		*Dat.* nobis, *to us,*
	Acc. me, *me,*		*Acc.* nos, *us,*
	Voc. ———		*Voc.* ———
	Abl. me, *with me:*		*Abl.* nobis, *with us.*

Tu, *Thou.*

Sing.	*N.* tu, *thou,*	*Plur.*	*N.* vos, *ye,* [*you,*]
	G. tui, *of thee,*		*G.* veſtrum *v.* veſtri, *of you,*
	D. tibi, *to thee,*		*D.* vobis, *to you,*
	A. te, *thee,*		*A.* vos, *you,*
	V. tu, *O thou,*		*V.* vos, *O ye,* [*you,*]
	A. te, *with thee:*		*A.* vobis, *with you.*

or *you,*

† See Chap. IX.

Sui, of himſelf, of herſelf, of itſelf.

Sing.	*N.* ———	*Plur.*	*N.* ———
	G. ſui, *of himſelf*, &c.		*G.* ſui, *of themſelves*,
	D. ſibi, *to himſelf*,		*D.* ſibi, *to themſelves*,
	A. ſe, *himſelf*,		*A.* ſe, *themſelves*,
	V. ———		*V.* ———
	A. ſe, *with himſelf*:		*A.* ſe, *with themſelves*.

A PRONOUN is an irregular Kind of Noun: *Or*, it is a Part of Speech which has reſpect to, and ſupplies the Place of a Noun; as, inſtead of your Name, I ſay, *Tu*, Thou *or* You; Inſtead of *Jacobus fecit*, James did it, I ſay, *Ille fecit*, He did it, *viz.* James.

NOTE, 1. That the Dat. *Mihi* is ſometimes, by the Poets, contracted into *Mi*.

NOTE, 2. That of old, the Gen. Plur. of *Ego* was *Noſtrorum* and *Noſtrarum*; of *Tu*, *Veſtrorum* and *Veſtrarum* (of which there are ſeveral Examples in *Plautus* and *Terence*) which were afterwards contracted into *Noſtrum* and *Veſtrum*.

NOTE, 3. That we uſe *Noſtrum* and *Veſtrum* after Numerals, Partitives, Comparatives and Superlatives, and *Noſtri* and *Veſtri* after other Nouns, and Verbs; though there want not ſome Examples of theſe laſt with *Noſtrum* and *Veſtrum*, even in *Cicero* himſelf, as *Voſſius* ſhews.

Ille, illa, illud; *He, ſhe, that* or *it*.

Sing.	*N.* ille,	illa,	illud,	*Plur.*	*N.* illi,	illæ,	illa,
	G. illius,	illius,	illius,		*G.* illorum,	illarum,	illorum,
	D. illi,	illi,	illi,		*D.* illis,	illis,	illis,
	A. illum,	illam,	illud,		*A.* illos,	illas,	illa,
	V. ille,	illa,	illud,		*V.* illi,	illæ,	illa,
	A. illo,	illa,	illo:		*A.* illis,	illis,	illis.

Ipſe, ipſa, ipſum, *he himſelf, ſhe herſelf, itſelf;* and iſte, iſta, iſtud, *he, ſhe, that*, are declined as *ille*, ſave only that *ipſe* hath *ipſum* in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. ſing. Neuter.

Hic, hæc, hoc, *This*.

Sing.	*N.* hic,	hæc,	hoc,	*Plur.*	*N.* hi,	hæ,	hæc,
	G. hujus,	hujus,	hujus,		*G.* horum,	harum,	horum,
	D. huic,	huic,	huic,		*D.* his,	his,	his,
	A. hunc,	hanc,	hoc,		*A.* hos,	has,	hæc,
	V. hic,	hæc,	hoc,		*V.* hi,	hæ,	hæc,
	A. hoc,	hac,	hoc:		*A.* his,	his,	his.

Is, ea, id; *He, ſhe, it*, or *that*.

Sing.	*N.* is,	ea,	id,	*Plur.*	*N.* ii,	eæ,	ea,
	G. ejus,	ejus,	ejus,		*G.* eorum,	earum,	eorum,
	D. ei,	ei,	ei,		*D.* iis, *vel* eis,		
	A. eum,	eam,	id,		*A.* eos,	eas,	ea,
	V. ———				*V.* ———		
	A. eo,	ea,	eo:		*A.* iis, *vel* eis.		

Quis, quæ, quod *vel* quid? *Who, which, what?*

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
N.	quis,	quæ,	quod, *vel* quid,	*N.* qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G.	cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	*G.* quorum,	quoram,	quorum,
D.	cui,	cui,	cui,	*D.* quies, *vel* quibus,		
A.	quem,	quam,	quod, *vel* quid,	*A.* quos,	quas,	quæ,
V.	——	——		*V.* ——	——	
A.	quo,	qua,	quo:	*A.* quies, *vel* quibus.		

Qui, quæ, quod; *Who, which, that.*

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
N.	qui;	quæ,	quod,	*N.* qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G.	cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	*G.* quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D.	cui,	cui,	cui,	*D.* quies, *vel* quibus,		
A.	quem,	quam,	quod,	*A.* quos,	quas,	quæ,
V.	——	——		*V.* ——	——	
A.	quo,	qua,	quo:	*A.* quies, *vel* quibus.		

Meus, my, *or* mine; *Tuus*, thy, *or* thine; *Suus*, his own, her own, its own, their own, are declined like *Bonus*, *-a*, *-um*. And *Noſter*, our, *or* ours; *Veſter*, your, *or* yours, like *Pulcher*, *-chra*, *-chrum*, of the Firſt and Second Declenſion. But *Tuus*, *Suus*, and *Veſter*, want the Vocative; *Noſter* and *Meus* have it, in which this laſt hath *mi*, (and ſometimes *meus*) in the Maſc. Singular.

Noſtras, of our country? *Veſtras*, of your country; *Cujas*, of what *or* which Country? are declined like *Felix*, of the Third Declenſion, Gen. *Noſtratis*, Dat. *Noſtrati*, &c.

Note, 1. That all Nouns and Pronouns which one cannot call upon, or addreſs himſelf unto, want the Vocative. In conſequence of which Rule many Nouns, as, *Nullus*, *Nemo*; *Qualis*, *Quantus*, *Quot*, &c. and ſeveral Pronouns, as, *Ego*, *Sui*, *Quis*, &c. want the Vocative; but not ſo many, either of the one or the other, as is commonly taught. For which Reaſon we have given Vocatives to *Ille*, *Ipſe*, *Hic* and *Idem*, therein following the Judgment of the great *Voſſius*, *Meſſieurs de Port Royal*, and *Johnſon*, which they ſupport by the following Authorities:

Eſto nunc, Sol, teſtis, & hæc mihi terra precanti. Virg. Æn. 12.
Tu mihi libertas illa paterna veni. Tibul. lib. 2. El. 4.
O nox illa, quæ pene æternas huic urbi tenebras attuliſti. Cic. pro Flacc.
Ipſe meas æther accipe ſumme preces. Ovid. in Ibid.

And the Vocative of *Idem* ſeems to be confirmed by that of Ovid, Met. 15.

——*quique fuiſti*
Hippolytus, dixit, nunc idem Virbius eſto.

Though all Authors before them will only allow four Pronouns, *viz.* *Tu*, *Meus*, *Noſter* and *Noſtras*, to have the Vocative.

Note, 2. That *Qui* is ſometimes uſed for *Quis*; as, Cic. *Qui tantus fuit labor?* Ter. *Qui erit rumor populi, ſi id feceris?*

NOTE, 3. That *Quod* with its Compounds, *Aliquod*, *Quodvis*, *Quoddam*, &c. are uſed when they agree with a Subſtantive in the ſame Caſe; *Quid* with its Compounds, *Aliquid*, *Quidvis*, *Quiddam*, &c. either have no Subſtantive expreſt, or govern one in the Genitive: Whence it is that theſe laſt are commonly reckoned Subſtantives. But that *quid* as well as *quod* is originally an Adjective, its Signification plainly ſhews; otherwiſe we ſhall make *Multum*, *Plus*, *Tantum*, *Quantum*, &c. alſo Subſtantives, when they govern the Genitive; which yet moſt Grammarians agree to be Adjectives, having the common Word *Negotium* underſtood.

NOTE, 4. That *Qui* the Relative hath oftentimes *qui* in the Ablative, and that (which is remarkable) in all Genders and Numbers, as Mr. *Johnſon* evinces by a great many Examples out of *Plautus* and *Terence*; to which he might have added one out of *C. Nepos*, III. 3.

NOTE, 5. That *Noſtras*, *Veſtras*, and *Cujas*, are declined like *Gentile* or *National* Nouns in *as* of the Third Decl. in Imitation of which they are formed; as, *Arpinas*, *Fidenas*, *Privernas*, a Man, Woman, *or* Thing, of *or* belonging to the Towns of *Arpinum*, *Fidenæ*, or *Privernum*, and may have the Neut. as well as theſe: (For as *Cic.* has *Iter Arpinas*, and *Liv. Bellum Privernas*; ſo *Colum.* has *Arbuſtum noſtras*, and *Cic. Noſtratia verba*) contrary to what *Linacer* teaches.

[*I paſs over taking nocice, that in old authors, eſpecially* Plautus, *we find* quis *and* quiſquis *ſometimes of the Fem. Gender;* mis *and* tis *for* mei *and* tui; hiſce *for* hi; hibus, ibus, *for* his, iis; illæ, ipſæ, iſtæ, quæ, *in the Gen. or Dat. Sing. Fem.* em *for* eum; iſtes *for* iſtos; quoius, quoi, *for* cujus, cui, *becauſe they are extraordinary.*]

Of COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

I. Some are compounded of *Quis* and *Qui*, with ſome other Word or Syllable. In theſe *Quis* is ſometimes the firſt and ſometimes the laſt Part of the Word compounded: But *Qui* is always the firſt.

1. The Compounds of *Quis*, when it is put firſt, are, *Quiſnam*, who? *Quiſpiam*, *Quiſquam*, any one; *Quiſque*, every one; *Quiſquis*, whoſoever: Which are thus declined;

	Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Quiſnam,	quænam, quodnam, *vel* quidnam;	cujuſnam,	cuinam.
Quiſpiam,	quæpiam, quodpiam, *vel* quidpiam;	cujuſpiam,	cuipiam.
Quiſquam,	quæquam, quodquam, *vel* quidquam;	cujuſquam,	cuiquam.
Quiſquæ,	quæque, quodque, *vel* quidque;	cujuſque,	cuique.
Quiſquiſs,	——— quidquid, *vel* quicquid;	cujuſcujus,	cuicui.

And ſo forth in their other Caſes, according to the ſimple *Quis*. But *Quiſquis* has no Feminine at all, and the Neuter only in the Nom. and Acc. *Quiſquam* has alſo *quicquam* for *quidquam*. Acc. *quenquam*, without the Fem. the Plural is ſcarcely uſed.

2. The Compounds of *Quis*, when it is put laſt, are, *Aliquis*, ſome; *Ecquis*, who? To which ſome add, *Nequis*, *Siquis* and *Numquis*; but theſe are more frequently read ſeparately, *ne quis*, *ſi quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined,

	Nom.		*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Aliquis,	aliquâ,	aliquod, *vel* aliquid,	alicujus,	alicui.
Ecquis,	ecqua, *vel* ecquæ,	ecquod, *vel* ecquid,	eccujus,	eccui.
Si quis,	ſi qua,	ſi quod, *vel* ſi quid,	ſi cujus,	ſi cui.
Ne quis,	ne qua,	ne quod, *vel* ne quid,	ne cujus,	ne cui.
Num quis,	num qua,	num quod, *vel* num quid,	num cujus,	num cui.

NOTE, That theſe, and only theſe, have *qua* in the Nom. Sing. Fem. and Nom. and Acc. Plur. Neut.

3. The Compounds of *Qui* are *Quicunque*, whoſoever; *Quidam*, ſome; *Quilibet*, *Quivis*, any one, whom you pleaſe; are thus declined,

Nom.			*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Quicunque,	quæcunque,	quodcunque,	cujuſcunque,	cuicunque.
Quidam,	quædam,	quoddam, *vel* quiddam,	cujuſdam,	cuidam.
Quilibet,	quælibet,	quodlibet, *vel* quidlibet,	cujuſlibet,	cuilibet.
Quivis,	quævis,	quodvis, *vel* quidvis,	cujuſvis,	cuivis.

Some of theſe are twice compounded; as, *Ecquiſnam*, Who? *Unuſquiſque*, Every one. The firſt is ſcarce declined beyond its Nom. and the ſecond wants the Plural.

NOTE, 1. That all theſe Compounds want the Vocative, except *Quiſque*, *Aliquis*, *Quilibet*, *Unuſquiſque*, and perhaps ſome others. *Vid. Voſſ.* p. 335.

NOTE, 2. That all theſe Compounds have ſeldom or never *queis*, but *quibus*, in their Dat. and Abl. Plur.

NOTE, 3. That *Quidam* hath *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam*, vel *quiddam*, in the Acc. Sing and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the Gen. Plur. *n* being put inſtead of *m* for the better Sound, as it is for the ſame Reaſon in theſe Caſes of *Idem*.

II. Some reckon among Compound Pronouns, *Ego*, *Tu*, and *Sui*, with *Ipſe*; but in the beſt Books they are generally read ſeparately; which ſeems neceſſary, becauſe of *te ipſe* and *ſe ipſe*, where the two Words are of different Caſes.

III. *Is* is compounded with the Syllable *dem*, and contracted into *Idem*, the ſame; which is thus declined:

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
Nom. Idem,	eadem,	idem,	*Nom.* iidem,	eædem,	eadem,
Gen. ejuſdem,	ejuſdem,	ejuſdem,	*Gen.* eorundem,	earundem,	eorundem,
Dat. eidem,	eidem,	eidem,	*Dat.* eiſdem, *vel* iiſdem,		
Acc. eundem,	eandem,	idem,	*Acc.* eoſdem,	eaſdem,	eadem,
Voc. idem,	eadem,	idem,	*Voc.* iidem,	eædem,	eadem,
Abl. eodem,	eadem,	eodem:	*Abl.* eiſdem, *vel* iiſdem.		

IV. Moſt of the other Compound Pronouns are only to be found in certain Caſes and Genders; as,

1. Of *Iſthe* and *hic* is compounded, Nom. *Iſthic*, *iſthæc*, *iſthoc*, vel *iſthuc*, Acc. *Iſthunc*, *iſthanc*, *iſthoc*, vel *iſthuc*. Abl. *Iſthoc*, *iſthac*, *iſthoc*. Nom. and Acc. Plur. Neut. *Iſthæc*.

2. Of *Ecce* and *Is* is compounded *Eccum*, *Eccam*; Plural, *eccos*, *eccas*; And from *Ecce* and *Ille*, *Ellum*, *ellam*; *ellos*, *ellas*, in the Accuſatives.

3. Of *Modus* and *is*, *hic*, *iſte*, and *quis*, are compounded theſe Genitives, *Ejuſmodi*, *hujuſmodi*, *iſtiuſmodi*, *cujuſmodi*; and ſometimes with the Syllable *ce* put in the Middle, *ejuſcemodi*, *hujuſcemodi*, &c.

4. Of *cum* and theſe Ablatives, *me*, *te*, *ſe*, *nobis*, *vobis*, *qui*, or *quo*, and *quibus*, are compounded *mecum*, *tecum*, *ſecum*, *nobiſcum*, *vobiſcum*, *quicum*, or *quocum*, and *quibuſcum*.

5. To theſe add ſome Pronouns compounded with theſe ſyllabical Adjections, *met*, *te*, *ſe*, *pte*, *cine*, to make their Signification more pointed and emphatical; as, *Egomet*, *tute*, *hujuſce*, *meapte*, *hiccine*.

REMARKS on ENGLISH PRONOUNS.

1. In the Nominative, or *Foregoing State* (as the *Engliſh* Grammarians call it) we uſe, *I*, *Thou*, *He*, *She*, *We*, *Ye*, *They*, and *Who*: But in the other Caſes (which they name the *Following State*) we uſe, *Me*, *Thee*, *Him*, *Her*, *Us*, *You*, *Them*, and *Whom*.

2. When we ſpeak of a *Perſon*, we uſe *Who* and *Whom*, whether we ſk a Queſtion or not; as, *Who did it? The Man who did it?* But if we peak of a *Thing*, with a Queſtion, we uſe *What;* as, *What Book is that?* Vithout a Queſtion we uſe *Which;* as, *The Book which you gave me.* And hen it is frequently underſtood; as, *The Book you gave me.*

NOTE, That *What* is often uſed, even without a Queſtion, inſtead of *The Thing which*, or *That which;* as, *I know what you deſign*, i. e. *The Thing hich*, or *That which* you deſign. As, on the contrary, when it refers to ome particular Thing mentioned before, we make uſe of *Which*, even ith a Queſtion; as, *Give me the Book; Which Book? Which of the Books?*

3. *This* makes in the Plural *Theſe*, and *That* makes *Thoſe*.

NOTE, That *That* is frequently uſed inſtead of *Who, Whom*, or *Which;* s, *The Man that told you, the Man that we ſaw, the Book that I lent you.*

4. We uſe *My, Thy, Her, Our, Your, Their*, when they are joined with Subſtantives, or the Word *Own;* and *Mine, Thine, Hers, Ours, Yours, Theirs*, when the Subſtantive is left out or underſtood; as, *My Book, This Book is mine*, &c.

NOTE, That with *own*, or a Subſtantive beginning with a Vowel, we ſometimes uſe *Mine* and *Thine;* as, *My Eye;* or *Mine Eye; Thy own*, or *Thine own.*

5. We often uſe *Here, There, Where*, compounded with theſe Particles, *Of, By, Upon, About, In, With*, inſtead of *This, That, Which*, and *What*, with theſe ſame Particles; as, *Hereof, Hereby, Hereupon, Hereabouts, Herein, Herewith;* for, *Of this, By this, Upon this, About this Place, In this, With this*, &c.

6. *Whoſe* and *Its* are Genitives, inſtead of, *Of whom, Of it;* and it is a Fault to uſe *Its* for *'Tis*, or *it is*, as ſome do.

CAP. III.

De Verbo.

M. QUomodo declinatur Verbum?

D. Per Voces, Modos, Tempora, Numeros, & Perſonas.

M. Quot ſunt Voces?

D. Duæ; *Activa* & *Paſſiva.*

M. Quot ſunt Modi?

D. Quatuor; *Indicativus, Subjunctivus, Imperativus*, & *Infinitivus.*

M. Quot ſunt Numeri?

CHAP. III.

Of VERB.

M. *HOW is a Verb declined?*

S. *By Voices, Moods, Tenſes, Numbers, and Perſons.*

M. *How many Voices are there?*

S. *Two; the* Active *and* Paſſive.

M. *How many Moods are there?*

S. *Four;* Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, *and* Infinitive.

M. *How many Numbers are there?*

D. Duo; *Singularis & Pluralis.*

M. Quot ſunt Tempora?

D. Quinque; *Præſens, Præteritum-imperfectum, Præteritum-perfectum, Præteritum-pluſquam-perfectum,* & *Futurum.*

M. Quot ſunt Perſonæ?

D. Tres; *Prima, Secunda, Tertia.*

S. *Two;* Singular *and* Plural.

M. *How many Tenſes are there?*

S. *Five;* the Preſent, the Preter-imperfect, the Preter-perfect, the Preter-pluperfect, *and* the Future.

M. *How many Perſons are there?*

S. *Three;* Firſt, Second, Third.

A VERB *is a Part of Speech which ſignifies to be, to do, or to ſuffer.* Or, *a Verb is that Part of Speech which expreſſes what is affirmed or ſaid of Things.*

A Verb may be diſtinguiſhed from any other Part of Speech theſe two Ways. 1. A Verb being the moſt neceſſary and eſſential Part of a Sentence, without which it cannot ſubſiſt, whatever Word with a Subſtantive Noun makes full Senſe, or a Sentence, is a Verb; and that which does not make full Senſe with it, is not a Verb. 2. Whatever Word with HE or IT SHALL before it makes Senſe, is a Verb; otherwiſe not.

I. In moſt Verbs there are two Forms or VOICES, the ACTIVE ending in *o*, and the PASSIVE in *or*. The former expreſſes what is done by the Nominative or Perſon before it. The latter, what is ſuffered by, or done to the Nominative or Perſon before it; *Amo*, I love; *Amor*, I am loved.

II. The MOODS are divided into *Finite* and *Infinite*. The firſt three, *viz.* the *Indicative*, *Subjunctive* and *Imperative*, are called FINITE, becauſe they have certain fixt Terminations, anſwering to certain Perſons both ſingular and plural. The laſt is called INFINITIVE or INFINITE, becauſe it is not confined to one Number or Perſon more than another.

1. The INDICATIVE Mood affirms or denies poſitively; as, *Amo*, I love; *Non Amo*, I do not love: Or elſe aſks a Queſtion; as, *An amas?* Doſt thou love? *Annon amas?* Doſt thou not love?

2. The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood generally depends upon another Verb in the ſame Sentence, either going before or coming after; as, *Si me ametis, præcepta mea ſervate*; If ye love me, keep my Commandements.

[*This Mood is commonly branched out into three Moods,* viz. *the* Optative, *the* Subjunctive, *more ſtrictly taken, and the* Potential. 1. *It is called* OPTATIVE, *when a Word importing a* Wiſh; *as,* Utinam, *Would to God,* O ſi, *O if, goes before it.* 2. *It is named* SUBJUNCTIVE, *when it is ſubjoined to ſome other Conjunction or Adverb, or to Interrogatives becoming Indefinites,* (See Chap. IX.) 3. *It is called* POTENTIAL, *when with the ſimple affirmation of the Verb is alſo ſignified ſome Modification or Affection of it, ſuch as a* Power, Poſſibility, Liberty, Duty, Will, *&c. The Signs whereof in our Language are,* May, Can, Might, Could, Would, Should, *and* Had, (*for* Would have *or* Should have; *as, They had repented,* for *would have.*) *But becauſe the Terminations of theſe Moods are the ſame, we have comprehended them all under one,* viz. *the* Subjunctive, *to which, with ſmall Difficulty,*

they may be reduced. Otherwiſe, if we will conſtitute as many Moods as there are various Modifications wherewith a Verb or Affirmative can be affected, we muſt multiply them to a far greater Number, and ſo we ſhall have a Promiſſive, Hortative, Precative, Conceſſive, Mandative, Interrogative *Mood; nay, a* Volitive *and* Debitive, *which is commonly included in the* Potential. *As for the* Optative, *it is plain that the wiſh is not in the Verb itſelf, (which ſignifies only the Matter of it, or what is wiſhed) but in the Verb* Opto, *which is underſtood, with* ut, uti, *or* utinam, *which really ſignify no more but* That, *and it is very probable that in like manner ſome Verb, or other Word, may alſo be underſtood to what is called the* Potential *Mood, ſuch as* Ita eſt, Res ita eſt, Fieri poteſt ut, *&c. as* Voſſius, Sanctius, Perizonius, *and others, do contend; though Mr.* Johnſon *is of another Opinion.*]

3. The IMPERATIVE Mood commands, exhorts, or intreats; as, *Ama*, Love thou.

4. The INFINITIVE Mood expreſſes the Signification of the Verb in general, and is Engliſhed by TO; as, *Amare*, To love.

III. The TENSES are either *Simple* or *Compound*. The SIMPLE *Tenſes*, are the *Preſent*, the *Preter-perfect*, and *Future*.

1. The PRESENT	Tenſe ſpeaks of Time now	Preſent.
2. The PRETER-PERFECT		Paſt.
3. The FUTURE		To come.

The COMPOUND Tenſes are the *Preter-imperfect* and the *Preter-pluperfect*.

4. The PRETER-IMPERFECT refers to ſome paſt Time, and imports that the Thing was preſent and unfiniſhed then; as, *Amabam*, I did love [*viz.* then.]

5. The PRETER-PLUPERFECT refers to ſome paſt Time, and imports that the Thing was paſt at or before that Time; as, *Scripſeram epiſtolam*, I had written a Letter [*i. e.* before that Time.]

There is alſo a Compound Future Tenſe called the FUTURE-PERFECT, or EXACT, which refers to ſome Time yet to come, and imports that a Thing as yet Future ſhall be paſt and finiſhed at or before that Time; as, *cum cænavero tu leges*, when I ſhall have ſupped, [*i. e. after Supper*] you ſhall read. This Future is only in the Subjunctive Mood, and the Sign of it is *Shall have;* as the other Future called the FUTURE-IMPERFECT, is only in the Indicative, which, when joined with another Future, imports that two Things yet future ſhall be contemporary, or exiſt at one Time; as, *Cum cœnabo tu leges*, When I ſhall ſup, [*i. e. in Time of Supper*] you ſhall read.

[*And not only the Tenſes, but even the* MOODS *themſelves may be divided into* SIMPLE *and* COMPOUND. *I call the* Indicative *a* Simple Mood, *becauſe it ſimply affirms ſomething of its Perſon or Nominative. But the other three Moods I call* Compound, *becauſe they have ſome other* Ideas *or* Modifications *of our Thoughts ſuperadded to the ſimple Signification of the Verb; ſuch as,* a Command, a Deſire, Prohibition, Poſſibility, Liberty, Will, Duty, Wiſh, Conceſſion, Suppoſition, Condition, Purpoſe, *&c. Theſe Modifications are either really included in the Verb; as* a Command, *&c. in the* Imperative, *and, according to* Johnſon, Power, Will, Duty, *&c. in the Mood called* Potential; *or cloſely interwoven with it by the Help of a Conjunction, Adverb, or other Verb expreſt or underſtood; and becauſe theſe alſo generally connote Time,*

they very frequently make all the Tenſes of theſe Moods to become Compound Tenſes. *For, with reſpect to their* Execution, *they are generally future; but with reſpect to their* Model Signification, *they may fall under any of the other diſtinctions of Time as well as the Future. Thus, for inſtance,* Lege, *Read thou, with reſpect to its* Execution, *is future; but with reſpect to the* Command *it is preſent. Again, in* Legam, *I may or can read, the* Action *(if done at all) muſt be future, but the* Liberty *or* Poſſibility *are preſent; and ſo of others. Now, as it ſeems evident, that, from theſe* Modifications *of the Verb, more than from the bare* Execution *of it, the Tenſes of theſe Moods have at firſt been diſtinguiſhed; ſo I am of Opinion, that had Grammarians taken their Meaſures accordingly, they had not rendered this Matter ſo intricate as they have done. For ſome of them, as* Sanctius, &c. *determining the Times of theſe Moods by the* Execution *only, have made the whole* Imperative *and* Subjunctive *of the Future Time, and the* Infinitive *and* Participles *of all Times, or rather of no Time: Others,* viz. Voſſius, Linacer, Alvarus, Verepæus, &c. *though they will not go ſo far as* Sanctius, *yet upon the ſame Grounds make* utinam legam *the Future of the Optative;* Utinam legerem *the Preſent of it. By the ſame Rule they make a future of the* Potential *in* RIM; *as,* Citius crediderim, *I ſhould, or ſhall ſooner believe; and another of the* Subjunctive *in* ISSEM; *as,* Juravit ſe illum ſtatim interfecturum, niſi jusjurandum ſibi dediſſet; *He ſwore he would preſently kill him, if he ſhould not ſwear to him,* Cic. *But, with all imaginable Deference to theſe great Men, I humbly think that theſe Tenſes may be more eaſily accounted for, if we conſider them as* Compound, i. e. *reſpecting one Time as to their* Execution, *and another as to the various* Modifications *ſuperadded to, or involved in their Signification. To inſtance in the two laſt Examples, (becauſe they ſeem to have the greateſt Difficulty)* citius crediderim *ſeems to import theſe two things, 1ſt, That* I have and continue to have a Reaſon why I ſhould not believe it; *which Reaſon is of the Imperfect or paſt Time. And, 2dly, That* I ſhall ſooner have believed it than another Thing, *with reſpect to which it ſhall be paſt. For there are a great many Examples where the Preterite in* RIM *hath the ſame Signification with the Future Perfect in* RO; *as,* Si te inde exemerim, *Terent. for* exemero. *See* Voſſ. lib. v. cap. 15. *and* Aul. Gell. lib. xviii. cap. 2. *As to the other Example, the Compoſition of two Times is yet more evident; for tho'* jusjurandum dediſſet *be poſterior, and conſequently future with reſpect to* juravit, *yet it is prior, not only to the Time of the Relation, but to* interfecturum; *to prevent which it behoved it neceſſarily to be paſt; and ſo of others. The ſame Rule in my Opinion will likewiſe hold in the* Infinitive *and* Participles, *which of themſelves have always* one fixed Time; *and when they ſeem to be of another Time, that is not in them, but in the Verb that goes before them, or comes after them. Thus, for inſtance,* Scribere *is always preſent, or co-exiſtent with the Verb before it; and* Scripſiſſe *is always prior to the ſame Verb in all its Tenſes: as,* Dicit, dixit, *or* dicet; juvat, juvit, *or* juvabit Me ſcribere *and* Me ſcripſiſſe. *So alſo the* Participles *have a* fixed Time, *preſent, paſt, or future; and when any Part of the Verb* Sum *is joined with them, they retain their own Times, and have theſe of that Verb ſuperadded to them. But becauſe there are innumerable Occaſions of Speaking, wherein the nice diſtinctions of Times are not neceſſary, therefore it frequently happens that they are promiſcuouſly uſed; as I could evince by a great many Examples, not only in the* Paſſive, *but* Active *Voice, both in the* Latin *and other Languages, if there were Place for it. Which yet, in my Judgment, does not hinder, but that every Part of Verb hath formally, and in its own Nature, a certain Time* ſimple *or* compound, *to which it is fixed and determined.*]

IV. There are two NUMBERS, the SINGULAR and the PLURAL, anſwering to the ſame Numbers of a Noun or Pronoun.

V. There are three PERSONS in each Number; the FIRST ſpeaks of itſelf, the SECOND is ſpoken to, and the THIRD is ſpoken of. The *Firſt* hath only EGO and NOS, the *Second* only TU and VOS; and the *Third* any Subſtantive Noun ſingular and plural, put before the reſpective Terminations of the Verb, anſwering to them through all Voices, Moods, and Tenſes.

[*A Verb hath the ſame Reſpect to its Nominative that an Adjective hath to its Subſtantive; and therefore, as an Adjective hath not properly either Genders or Numbers, but certain Terminations fitted for thoſe of its Subſtantive, ſo a Verb hath properly neither Perſons nor Numbers, but certain Terminations anſwering to the Perſons and Numbers of its Nominative.*]

NOTE, 1. That *Ego* and *Tu* are ſeldom expreſt, becauſe the Terminations of the Verb immediately diſcover them, without any Hazard of a Miſtake.

NOTE, 2. That if a Subſtantive Noun be joined with *Ego* or *Tu*, the Verb is of the Perſon of theſe Pronouns, not of the Noun.

NOTE, 3. That in the Continuation of a Diſcourſe, the third Perſon is alſo frequently underſtood, becauſe eaſily known by what went before; and theſe Pronouns, *ille*, *ipſe*, *iſte*, *hic*, *is*, *idem*, *quis*, and *qui*, do often ſupply the Place of it.

The ENGLISH SIGNS of the TENSES are,

Preſent { Act. the Theme of the Verb, and *eſt*, *eth*, or *s*; or for the greater Emphaſis, *do*, *doſt*, *doth*, or *does*, before it.
Paſſ. *am*, *art*, *is*, *are*, *be*, *beeſt*, with a Word in *ed*, *en*, *t*, &c.

Imperf. { Act. *ed*, *edſt*, &c. or for the greater Emphaſis, *did*, *didſt*, before it.
Paſſ. *was*, *waſt*, *were*, *wert*, with a Word in *ed*, *en*, &c.

Perfect { Act. *have*, *haſt*, *hath* or *has*, with a Word in *ed*, *en*, &c. or as the Imp.
Paſſ. *have been*, *haſt been*, *hath* or *has been*, with a Word in *ed*, *en*, &c.

Pluper. { Act. *had*, *hadſt*, with a Word in *ed*, *en*, &c.
Paſſ. *had been*, *hadſt been*, with a Word in *ed*, *en*, &c.

Future { Act. *ſhall*, *will*, *ſhalt*, *wilt*, with the Verb.
Paſſ. *ſhall be*, *will be*, *ſhalt be*, *wilt be*, with the Word *ed*, *en*, &c.

The *Subjunctive* Mood Active has frequently theſe Signs:

Preſent *may* or *can*.
Imperf. *might*, *could*, *would*, *ſhould*.
Perfect. *may have* or *might have*, *could have*, *would have*, *ſhould have*.
Pluperf. *might have*, *could have*, *would have*, *ſhould have* or *had*.
Future. *ſhall have*.

The *Paſſive* has frequently the ſame Signs with *be* or *been*.

De Conjugationibus.

M. QUOT ſunt Conjugationes?

D. Quatuor; *Prima*, *Secunda*, *Tertia*, & *Quarta*.

M. Quæ ſunt Notæ harum Conjugationum?

Of Conjugations.

M. HOW *many Conjugations are there?*

S. *Four;* Firſt, Second, Third, *and* Fourth.

M. *What are the Marks of theſe Conjugations?*

	D.		*S.*
Prima habet	A longum	ante re Infinitivi.	*First* hath *A long* before re of the Infinitive.
Secunda habet	E longum		*Second* hath *E long*
Tertia habet	E breve		*Third* hath *E ſhort*
Quarta habet	I longum		*Fourth* hath *I long*

The Common *Characteriſtick* or MARK by which theſe Conjugations are diſtinguiſhed from one another, is one of theſe three Vowels, A, E, I, before the RE of the Infinitive Active, though they alſo may be known by the ſame Vowels in ſeveral other Parts of them; for *A* long is more frequent in the Firſt, *E* long in the Second, *E* or *I* ſhort in the Third, and *I* long in the Fourth: Only *E* before *bam*, *bas*, *bat*, &c. and before *mus* and *tis*; and *mur* and *mini*, is always long in whatever Conjugation it is found.

But it is to be obſerved, that the *Preterites* and *Supines*, and all the Parts formed from them, becauſe of the great Irregularity of their middle Syllables, and conſtant agreement in their laſt Vowel, and in the Terminations ariſing from it in all Conjugations) cannot properly be ſaid to be of any one Conjugation more than another; for there is nothing, for Example, in *Fricui*, *Docui*, *Elicui*, *Amicui*, or in *Fricatum*, *Doctum*, *Elicitum*, *Amictum*, or in the Parts that come from them, whereby to diſtinguiſh their Conjugations.

Prima Conjugatio.

A M O.

Vox Activa.

Præcipuæ Partes.

Præſ. Indic. *Perfect.* *Sup.* *Præſ. Infin.*

Am-o, am-avi, am-atum, am-are.

INDICATIVUS Modus.

Præſens.

Sing.
1 A M-o,
2 Am-as,
3 Am-at:

Plur.
1 Am-amus,
2 Am-atis,
3 Am-ant,

Imperfectum.

Sing.
1 Am-abam,
2 Am-abas,
3 Am-abat:

Plur.
1 Am-abamus,
2 Am-abatis,
3 Am-abant.

The firſt Conjugation.

To Love.

The Active Voice.

The principal Parts.

The INDICATIVE Mood.

The Preſent.

1 I *Love*, or *do love*,
2 *Thou loveſt*, or *doſt love*,
3 *He loveth*, or *doth love:*
1 *We love*, or *do love*,
2 *Ye* (or *you*) *love*, or *do love*,
3 *They love*, or *do love*.

The Imperfect.

1 *I loved*, or *did love*,
2 *Thou lovedſt*, or *didſt love*,
3 *He loved*, or *did love:*
1 *We loved*, or *did love*,
2 *Ye loved*, or *did love*,
3 *They loved*, or *did love*.

	Perfectum.	The Perfect.
Sing. 1	Am-avi,	1 *I have loved* *,
2	Am-aviſti,	2 *Thou haſt loved,*
3	Am-avit:	3 *He hath loved:*
Plur. 1	Am-avimus,	1 *We have loved,*
2	Am-aviſtis,	2 *Ye have loved,*
3	Am-averunt *vel* -avere.	3 *They have loved.*

	Pluſquamperfectum.	The Plu-perfect.
Sing. 1	Am-averam,	1 *I had loved,*
2	Am-averas,	2 *Thou hadſt loved,*
3	Am-averat:	3 *He had loved:*
Plur. 1	Am-averamus,	1 *We had loved,*
2	Am-averatis,	2 *Ye had loved,*
3	Am-averant:	3 *They had loved.*

	Futurum.	The Future.
Sing. 1	Am-abo,	1 *I ſhall* or *will love,*
2	Am-abis,	2 *Thou ſhalt* or *wilt love,*
3	Am-abit:	3 *He ſhall* or *will love:*
Plur. 1	Am-abimus,	1 *We ſhall* or *will love,*
2	Am-abitis,	2 *Ye ſhall* or *will love,*
3	Am-abunt.	3 *They ſhall* or *will love.*

SUBJUNCTIVUS. The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

	Præſens.	The Preſent.
Sing. 1	Am-em,	1 *I may* or *can love,*
2	Am-es,	2 *Thou mayſt* or *canſt love,*
3	Am-et:	3 *He may* or *can love:*
Plur. 1	Am-emus,	1 *We may* or *can love,*
2	Am-etis,	2 *Ye may* or *can love,*
3	Am-ent.	3 *They may* or *can love.*

	Imperfectum.	The Imperfect.	
Sing. 1	Am-arem,	1 *I might, could, would,* or *ſhould*	*love.*
2	Am-ares,	2 *Thou mightſt, couldſt, wouldſt,* &c.	
3	Am-aret:	3 *He might, could, would,* or *ſhould*	
Plur. 1	Am-aremus,	1 *We might, could, would,* or *ſhould*	
2	Am-aretis,	2 *Ye might, could, would,* or *ſhould*	
3	Am-arent.	3 *They might, could, would,* or *ſhould*	

Or, * *I loved,* or *did love, Thou lovedſt* or *didſt love,* &c. as in the Imperfect.

	Perfectum.	The Perfect.
Sing. 1	Am-averim,	1 *I may have loved,*
2	Am-averis,	2 *Thou mayſt have loved,*
3	Am-averit:	3 *He may have loved:*
Plur. 1	Am-averimus,	1 *We may have loved,*
2	Am-averitis,	2 *Ye may have loved,*
3	Am-averint.	3 *They may have loved.*

	Pluſquamperfectum.	The Plu-perfect.
Sing. 1	Am-aviſſem,	1 *I might, could, would,* &c. *have* or
2	Am-aviſſes,	2 *Thou mightſt, couldſt,* &c. *have* or
3	Am-aviſſet:	3 *He might, could,* &c. *have* or
Plur. 1	Am-aviſſemus,	1 *We might, could,* &c. *have* or
2	Am-aviſſetis,	2 *Ye might, could,* &c. *have* or
3	Am-aviſſent.	3 *They might, could,* &c. *have* or *had loved.*

	Futurum.	The Future.
Sing. 1	Am-avero,	1 *I ſhall have loved,*
2	Am-averis,	2 *Thou ſhalt have loved,*
3	Am-averit:	3 *He ſhall have loved:*
Plur. 1	Am-averimus,	1 *We ſhall have loved:*
2	Am-averitis,	2 *Ye ſhall have loved,*
3	Am-averint.	3 *They ſhall have loved.*

IMPERATIVUS Modus.		The IMPERATIVE Mood.
	Præſens.	The Preſent.
Plur. Sing. 2	Am-a *vel* am-ato,	2 *Love thou,* or *do thou love,*
3	Am-ato:	3 *Let him love:*
Plur. 2	Am-ate *vel* am-atote,	2 *Love ye,* or *do ye love,*
3	Am-anto.	3 *Let them love.*

INFINITIVUS Modus.	The INFINITIVE Mood.
Præſ. Am-are,	Pres. *To love.*
Perf. Am-aviſſe,	Perf. *To have* or *had loved.*
Fut. Am-aturum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.	Fut. *To be about to love.*

PARTICIPIA.	The PARTICIPLES.
Præſ. Am-ans,	Of the Preſent, *Loving.*
Perf. Am-aturus, -a, -um.	Of the Future, *About to love.*

GERUNDIA.	The GERUNDS.
Nom. Am-andum,	Nom. *Loving.*
Gen. Am-andi,	Gen. *Of Loving.*

Dat. Am-ando,	Dat. *To loving.*
Acc. Am-andum,	Acc. *Loving.*
Abl. Am-ando.	Abl. *From, in,* or *by loving.*
SUPINA.	The SUPINES.
Prius, Am-atum,	Firſt, *To love.*
Poſterius, Am-atu.	Laſt, *To love,* or *to be loved.*

VOX PASSIVA. *The Paſſive Voice.*

Amor, amatus, amari.

INDICATIVUS Modus. The INDICATIVE Mood.

Præſens. The Preſent.

Sing.	1 Am-or,	1 *I am loved,*	
	2 Am-aris *vel* -are,	2 *Thou art loved,*	
	3 Am-atur:	3 *He is loved:*	
Plur.	1 Am-amur,	1 *We are loved,*	
	2 Am-amini,	2 *Ye are loved,*	
	3 Am-antur.	3 *They are loved.*	

Imperfectum. The Imperfect.

Sing.	1 Am-abar,	1 *I was*	} *loved.*
	2 Am-abaris *vel* -abare,	2 *Thou waſt* [*wert*]	
	3 Am-abatur:	3 *He was*	
Plur.	1 Am-abamur,	1 *We were*	
	2 Am-abamini,	2 *Ye were*	
	3 Am-abantur.	3 *They were*	

Perfectum. The Perfect.

Sing. Am-atus	1 ſum *vel* fui,	1 *I have been*	} *loved.*
	2 es *vel* fuiſti,	2 *Thou haſt been*	
	3 eſt *vel* fuit:	3 *He hath been*	
Plur. Am-ati	1 ſumus *vel* fuimus,	1 *We have been*	
	2 eſtis *vel* fuiſtis	2 *Ye have been*	
	3 ſunt fuerunt *v.* fuere.	3 *They have been*	

Pluſquamperfectum. The Plu-perfect.

Sing. Am-atus	1 eram *vel* fueram,	1 *I had been*	} *loved.*
	2 eras *vel* fueras,	2 *Thou hadſt been*	
	3 erat *vel* fuerat:	3 *He had been*	
Plur. Am-ati	1 eramus *v.* fueramus,	1 *We had been*	
	2 eratis *vel* fueratis,	2 *Ye had been*	
	3 erant *vel* fuerant.	3 *They had been*	

Futurum. The Future.

Sing.	1 Am-abor,	1 *I ſhall* or *will be*	} *loved.*
	2 Am-aberis *vel* -abere,	2 *Thou ſhalt* or *wilt be*	
	3 Am-abitur:	3 *He ſhall* or *will be*	

Plur.	1 Am-abimur,	1 *We ſhall* or *will be*	*loved.*
	2 Am-abimini,	2 *Ye ſhall* or *will be*	
	3 Am-abuntur.	3 *They ſhall* or *will be*	

SUBJUNCTIVUS Modus. The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

Præſens. The Preſent.

Sing.	1 Am-er,	1 *I may* or *can be*	*loved.*
	2 Am-eris *vel* -ere,	2 *Thou mayſt* or *canſt be*	
	3 Am-etur:	3 *He may* or *can be*	
Plur.	1 Am-emur,	1 *We may* or *can be*	
	2 Am-emini,	2 *Ye may* or *can be*	
	3 Am-entur.	3 *They may* or *can be*	

Imperfectum. The Imperfect

Sing.	1 Am-arer,	1 *I might, could, would,* &c.	*be loved.*
	2 Am-areris *vel* -arere,	2 *Thou mightſt, couldſt,* &c.	
	3 Am-aretur:	3 *He might, could,* &c.	
Plur.	1 Am-aremur,	1 *We might, could,* &c.	
	2 Am-aremini,	2 *Ye might, could,* &c.	
	3 Am-arentur.	3 *They might, could,* &c.	

Perfectum. The Perfect.

Sing. Am-atus	1 ſim *vel* fuerim,	1 *I may have been*	*loved.*
	2 ſis *vel* fueris,	2 *Thou mayſt have been*	
	3 ſit *vel* fuerit:	3 *He may have been*	
Plur. Am-ati	1 ſimus *v.* fuerimus,	1 *We may have been*	
	2 ſitis *vel* fueritis,	2 *Ye may have been*	
	3 ſint *vel* fuerint.	3 *They may have been*	

Pluſquamperfectum. The Plu-perfect.

Sing. Am-atus	1 eſſem *v.* fuiſſem,	1 *I might, could,* &c. *have* or	*had been loved.*
	2 eſſes *vel* fuiſſes,	2 *Thou mightſt,* &c. *have* or	
	3 eſſet *vel* fuiſſet:	3 *He might,* &c. *have* or	
Plur. Am-ati	1 eſſemus *v.* fuiſſemus,	1 *We might,* &c. *have* or	
	2 eſſetis *vel* fuiſſetis,	2 *Ye might,* &c. *have* or	
	3 eſſent *vel* fuiſſent.	3 *They mght,* &c. *have* or	

Futurum. The Future.

Sing. Am-atus	1 fuero,	1 *I ſhall have been*	*loved.*
	2 fueris,	2 *Thou ſhalt have been*	
	3 fuerit:	3 *He ſhall have been*	
Plur. Am-ati	1 fuerimus,	1 *We ſhall have been*	
	2 fueritis,	2 *Ye ſhall have been*	
	3 fuerint.	3 *They ſhall have been*	

IMPERATIVUS Modus. The IMPERATIVE Mood.

Præſens. The Preſent.

Sing.	2 Am-are *vel* -ator,	2 *Be thou loved,*
	3 Am-ator:	3 *Let him be loved:*

Plur. 2	Am-amini,	2 *Be ye loved,*
3	Am-antor.	3 *Let them be loved.*
INFINITIVUS Modus.		The INFINITIVE Mood.
Præſ.	Am-ari.	*To be loved.*
Perf.	Am-atum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.	*To have* or *had been loved.*
Fut.	Am-atum iri.	*To be about to be loved.*
PARTICIPIA.		The PARTICIPLES.
Perfecti temporis,	Am-atus, -a, -um.	Of the Perfect, *Loved.*
Futuri,	Am-andus, -a, -um.	Of the Fut. *To be loved.*

Secunda Conjugatio.

VOX ACTIVA.

Doceo, docui, doctum, docere.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing. 1	2	3	*Plur.* 1	2	3
Pr.	Doc-eo,	-es,	-et:	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.
Im.	Doc-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat:	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Perf.	Doc-ui,	-uiſti,	-uit:	-uimus,	-uiſtis,	-uerunt, -uere.
Pluſ.	Doc-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat:	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
Fut.	Doc-ebo,	-ebis,	-ebit:	-ebimus,	-ebitis,	-ebunt.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr.	Doc-eam,	-eas,	-eat:	-eamus,	-eatis,	-eant.
Im.	Doc-erem,	-eres,	-eret:	-eremus,	-eretis,	-erent.
Perf.	Doc-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit:	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
Pluſ.	Doc-uiſſem,	-uiſſes,	-uiſſet:	-uiſſemus,	-uiſſetis,	-uiſſent.
Fut.	Doc-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit:	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſ.	Doc-	-e, -eto,	-eto:	-ete, -etote,	-ento.

INFINITIVUS.	*SUPINA.*	*PARTICIPIA.*	*GERUNDIA.*
Præſ. Doc-ere.	1 Doc-tum.	*Pr.* Doc-ens.	Doc-endum,
Perf. Doc-uiſſe.	2 Doc-tu.	*Fut.* Doc-turus.	Doc-endi,
Fut. Doc-turum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.			Doc-endo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Doceor, doctus, doceri.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
Pr. Doc-eor,	-eris, / -ere,	-etur:		-emur,	-emini,	-entur.
Im. Doc-ebar,	-ebaris, / -ebare,	-ebatur:		-ebamur,	-ebamini,	-ebantur.
Fut. Doc-ebor,	-eberis, / -ebere,	-ebitur:		-ebimur,	-ebimini,	-ebuntur.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Doc-ear,	-earis, / -eare,	-eatur:	-eamur,	-eamini,	-eantur.
Im. Doc-erer,	-ereris, / -erere,	-eretur:	-eremur,	-eremini,	-erentur.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſ. Doc-	-ere, / -etor,	-etor:	-emini,	-entor.

INFINITIVUS.

Præſ. Doc-eri.
Perf. Doc-tum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.
Fut. Doc-tum iri.

PARTICIPIA.

Perf. Doc-tus, -a, -um.
Fut. Doc-endus, -a, -um.

Tertia Conjugatio.

VOX ACTIVA.

Lego, legi, lectum, legere.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing. 1	2	3	*Plur.* 1	2	3
Præſ.	Leg-o,	-is,	-it:	-imus,	-itis,	-unt.
Imp.	Leg-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat:	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Perf.	Leg-i,	-iſti,	-it:	-imus,	-iſtis,	-erunt, -ere.
Pluſ.	Leg-eram,	-eras,	-erat:	-eramus,	-eratis,	-erant.
Fut.	Leg-am,	-es,	-et:	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ.	Leg-am,	-as,	-at:	-amus,	-atis,	-ant.
Imp.	Leg-erem,	-eres,	-eret:	-eremus,	-eretis,	-erent.

Perf. Leg-erim,	-eris,	-erit:	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.
Pluf. Leg-iſſem,	-iſſes,	-iſſet:	-iſſemus,	-iſſetis,	-iſſent.
Fut. Leg-ero,	-eris,	-erit:	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſ. Leg- {-e, -ito,	-ito:	{-ite, -itote,	-unto.

INFINITIVUS.	*SUPINA.*	*PARTICIPIA.*	*GERUNDIA.*
Præſ. Leg-ere.	1 Lec-tum.	*Pr.* Leg-ens.	Leg-endum,
Perf. Leg-iſſe.	2 Lec-tu.	*Fut.* Lec-turus.	Leg-endi,
Fut. Lec-turum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.			Leg-endo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Legor, lectus, legi.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.		*Plur.*		
Pr. Leg-or,	{-eris, -ere,	-itur:	-imur,	-imini,	-untur.
Im. Leg-ebar,	{-ebaris, -ebare,	-ebatur:	-ebamur,	-ebamini,	-ebantur.
Fut. Leg-ar,	{-eris, -ere,	-etur:	-emur,	-emini,	-entur.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Leg-ar,	{-aris, -are,	-atur:	-amur,	-amini,	-antur.
Im. Leg-erer,	{-ereris, -erere,	-eretur:	-eremur,	-eremini,	-erentur.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſ. Leg- {-ere, -itor,	-itor:	-imini,	-untor.

INFINITIVUS.	*PARTICIPIA.*
Præſ. Leg-i.	*Perf.* Lec-tus, -a, -um.
Perf. Lec-tum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.	*Fut.* Leg-endus, -a, -um
Fut. Lec-tum iri.	

Quarta Conjugatio.

VOX ACTIVA.

Audio, audivi, auditum, audire.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing. 1	2	3	*Plur.* 1	2	3
Pr.	Aud-io,	-is,	-it:	-imus,	-itis,	-iunt.
Im.	Aud-iebam,	-iebas,	-iebat:	-iebamus,	-iebatis,	-iebant.
Perf.	Aud-ivi,	-iviſti,	-ivit:	-ivimus,	-iviſtis,	-iverunt, -ivere.
Pluſ.	Aud-iveram,	-iveras,	-iverat:	-iveramus,	-iveratis,	-iverant.
Fut.	Aud-iam,	-ies,	-iet:	-iemus,	-ietis,	-ient.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr.	Aud-iam,	-ias,	-iat:	-iamus,	-iatis,	-iant.
Im.	Aud-irem,	-ires,	-iret:	-iremus,	-iretis,	-irent.
Perf.	Aud-iverim,	-iveris,	-iverit:	-iverimus,	-iveritis,	-iverint.
Pluſ.	Aud-iviſſem,	-iviſſes,	-iviſſet:	-iviſſemus,	-iviſſetis,	-iviſſent.
Fut.	Aud-ivero,	-iveris,	-iverit:	-iverimus,	-iveritis,	-iverint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Pr. Aud-	-i, -ito,	-ito:	-ite, -itote, -iunto.

INFINITIVUS.	*SUPINA.*	*PARTICIPIA.*	*GERUNDIA.*
Pr. Aud-ire,	1 Aud-itum.	*Pr.* Aud-iens.	Aud-iendum,
Perf. Aud-iviſſe,	2 Aud-itu.	*Fut.* Aud-iturus.	Aud-iendi,
Fut. Aud-iturum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.			Aud-iendo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Audior, auditus, audiri.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.		*Plur.*		
Pr. Aud-ior,	-iris, -ire,	-itur:	-imur,	-imini,	-iuntur.
Im. Aud-iebar,	-iebaris, -iebare,	-iebatur:	-iebamur,	-iebamini,	-iebantur.
Fut. Aud-ier,	-ieris, -iere,	-ietur,	-iemur,	-iemini,	-ientur.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Aud-iar,	-iaris, -iare,	-iatur:	-iamur,	-iamini,	-iantur.
Im. Aud-irer,	-ireris, -irere,	-iretur:	-iremur,	-iremini,	-irentur.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſ. Aud- {-ire, -itor, : -imini, -iuntor.

INFINITIVUS.

Præſ. Aud-iri.
Perf. Aud-itum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.
Fut. Aud-itum iri.

PARTICIPIA.

Perf. Aud-itus, -a, -um.
Fut. Aud-iendus, -a, -um.

¶ Note, *That in the Examples of the* Second, Third, *and* Fourth Conjugations, *we have omitted ſuch Parts of the* Paſſive Voice *as are ſupplied by the* Participle-perfect *with the Verb* Sum, viz. *The* Perfect *and* Plu-perfect *of the* Indicative, *and the* Perfect, Plu-perfect, and Future *of the* Subſtantive, *as being the ſame in all* Conjugations *with the Example of the* Firſt, *the Change of the* Participle *only excepted: But it is carefully to be obſerved, that the* Participle, *being an* Adjective, *muſt agree in* Gender, Number, *and* Caſe, *with its* Subſtantive, *or (which is the ſame thing) with the Perſon before it.*

I. REMARKS ſhewing when a LATIN *Verb* is to be rendered otherwiſe in ENGLISH than in the foregoing Example.

1. WHEN the Continuation of a Thing is ſignified, the Engliſh Verb may be varied in all its Tenſes by the Participle in ING, with the Verb AM; as,

Preſ. *I am reading,*	} for {	*I read.*
Imp. *I was reading,*		*I did read.*
Perf. *I have been reading,*		*I have read.*
Plup. *I had been reading,*		*I had read.*
Fut. *I ſhall be reading,*		*I ſhall read.*

So likewiſe in the *Paſſive* Voice, *The Houſe is building*, Domus ædificatur; *The Leſſon was preſcribing*, Lectio præſcribebatur. Sometimes *a* is ſet before the Participle; as, *While the Houſe is a building, It is a doing, He is a dying.*

2. When a Queſtion is aſked, the Nominative Caſe or Perſon is ſet after the Verb, or the Sign of the Verb; as, *Love I? Do I love? Can I love? Should he be loved?*

3. We have made THOU the ſecond Perſon ſingular, to diſtinguiſh it from the Plural. But it is Cuſtomary with us, (as alſo with the *French* and others) though we ſpeak but to one particular Perſon, to uſe the Plural YOU; and never THOU, but when we addreſs ourſelves to Almighty God, or otherwiſe when we ſignify Familiarity, Diſdain, or Contempt.

4. The *Perfect* of the *Indicative* is often Engliſhed as the *Imperfect;* as *Nunquam amavi hunc hominem*, I never loved [or, did love] this Man.

See a Train of Examples in *Ovid. Metamorp. lib.* 1. from *v.* 21. to 39.

5. The PERFECT Tenſe is frequently Engliſhed by HAD after *Antequam*, *Poſtquam*, *Ubi* or *Ut* for *Poſtquam*; as, *Poſtquam ſuperavimus Iſthmum*, After we had [were] paſt over the *Iſthmus*, *Ovid.* *Hæc ubi dicta dedit*, When he had ſpoken theſe Words, *Liv.* *Ut me ſalutavit, ſtatim Romam profectus eſt*, After he had ſaluted me, *&c.* Cic.

6. We have choſen MAY, CAN, MIGHT, COULD, *&c.* for the Engliſh of the SUBJUNCTIVE Mood, becauſe theſe are the moſt frequent Signs of it, and diſtinguiſh it beſt from other Moods; but very often it is the ſame with the *Indicative*, ſave only that it hath ſome *Conjunction* or *Indefinite* Word before it; ſuch as, *If*, *Seeing*, *Leſt*, *That*, *Although*, *I wiſh*, &c. as, *Si amem*, If I love; *Ne amem*, Leſt I love; *Cauſa eſt cur amem*, It is the Cauſe why I love, *Ovid.* And frequently it hath both; as, *Oro ut ames*, I intreat that you may love, *Idem.*

7. The PRESENT of the *Subjunctive* after *Quaſi*, *Tanquam*, and the like, is ſometimes Engliſhed as the Imperfect; as, *Quaſi intelligant qualis ſit*, As if they underſtood what kind of Perſon he is, *Cic.*

8. When a Queſtion is aſked, the *Preſent* of the *Subjunctive* is frequently Engliſhed by SHALL, or SHOULD; as, *Eloquar an ſileam?* Shall I ſpeak or be ſilent? *Virg.* *Singula quid referam?* Why ſhould I mention every thing? *Ovid.* Likewiſe after *Non eſt quod?* as, *Non eſt* (ſupple *cauſa*) *quod eas*, There no is Reaſon why you ſhould go, *or* you need not go. Sometimes it is Engliſhed by WOULD; as, *In facinus juraſſe putes*, You would think they had ſworn to [commit] Wickedneſs, *Ovid.*

9. We have Engliſhed the PERFECT of the *Subjunctive* in RIM by MAY HAVE, (as, *Ne fruſtra hi tales viri venerint*, That ſuch Men as theſe may not have come in vain, *Cic.* *Forſitan audieris*, You may perhaps have heard it;) to diſtinguiſh it from the *Preſent* and *Plu-perfect*, by the Signs of which it is alſo moſt frequently Engliſhed; as, *Ut ſic dixerim*, That I may ſo ſpeak. *Ubi ego audiverim?* Where ſhould I have heard it? *Unus homo tantas ſtrages ediderit?* Could one Man make ſo great a Slaughter? *Virg.* *Fortaſſe errarim*, Perhaps I might be in an Error, *Plin.* *Oratores quos viderim peritiſſimi*, The ableſt Orators I have ſeen [*or* could ſee], *Quintil.*

10. This *Perfect* in RIM ſometimes inclines very much to a Future Signification, and then it is Engliſhed by SHOULD, WOULD, COULD, CAN, WILL, SHALL; as, *Citius crediderim*, I ſhould ſooner believe, *Juv.* *Libenter audierim*, I would gladly hear, *Cic.* *Ciceronem cuicunque eorum facile oppoſuerim*, I could eaſily match *Cicero* with any of them, *Quintil.* *Non facile dixerim*, I cannot well tell, *Cic.* *Nec tamen excluſerim alios*, And yet I will not exclude others, *Plin.* *Si Paululum modo quid te fugerit, ego perierim*, If you but trip in the leaſt, I ſhall be undone, *Ter.* But all thoſe Ways of ſpeaking, tho' indeed they reſpect the Future as to the Execution, yet they ſeem alſo to look a little beyond it, to a time when their Futurity ſhall be paſt; and ſo come near in Signification to the Future in RO.

11. The *Perfect* of the *Subjunctive* after *Quaſi*, *Tanquam*, and the like, may ſometimes be Engliſhed by HAD; as, *Quaſi affuerim*, As if I had been preſent, *Plaut.* *Perinde ac ſi jam vicerint*, As if they had already overcome, *Cic.*

12. The PLUPERFECT in ISSEM is ſometimes Engliſhed by SHOULD, as, *Imperaret quod vellet, quodcunque imperaviſſet, ſe eſſe facturos*, He might command what he pleaſed, whatever he commanded, [ſhould command] they would do, *Cæſ.* *Fœdus ictum eſt his legibus, ut cujus populi cives eo certamine viciſſent, is alteri imperaret*, An Agreement was made on theſe

Terms, that that people whoſe countrymen ſhould be victorious in that Combat, ſhould have the Sovereignty over the other, *Liv.* And this happens when a Thing is ſignified as future at a certain paſt Time referred to, and commonly takes Place, when what was formerly ſaid directly, is afterwards recited indirectly; as, *Ne dubita, dabitur quodcunque optaris*, Doubt not whatſoever thou ſhalt chooſe ſhall be given thee, *Ovid. Sol. Phaethonti faturum ſe eſſe dixit, quicquid obtaſſet*, The *Sun* told *Phaeton* that he would do whatſoever he ſhould chooſe, *Cic.* Where it is worth noticing, That what was the *Future* of the *Subjunctive* in the direct Speech, becomes the *Plu-perfect* in the indirect recital of it. See *Turner*'s Exerciſes, *p.* 21, *&c.* But, as we have ſaid, *p.* 38. the *Pluperfect* notwithſtanding its coming in the Place of a *Future*, ſtill retains its own proper compound Time; that is, it was prior to a Thing now paſt at the Time of the Recital by *Cicero*, tho' it was Future when firſt ſpoken by the *Sun*. And therefore there is no Reaſon for making this Termination *iſſem*, a *Future* Tenſe, as Mr. Turner does.

13. Though the proper Engliſh of the FUTURE in RO be SHALL. HAVE, yet generally the HAVE or the SHALL, and frequently both, are omitted, as, *Qui Antonium oppreſſerit, is bellum confecerit*, He who ſhall cut off *Antony*, ſhall put an End to the War, *Cic. Haud deſinam donec perfecero hoc*, I will not give over till I have effected this, *Ter. Si negaverit*, If he denies it, *Cic.* Sometimes it is Engliſhed by WILL; as, *Dixerit fortaſſe aliquis*, Somebody will perhaps ſay, *Cic. Aut conſolando, aut conſilio, aut re, juvero*, I will aſſiſt you either by comforting you, or with Counſel, or with Money, *Idem.* But though we thus render the *Future* in RO in our Language, and though, which is more material, very frequently it and the *Future* of the *Indicative* are uſed promiſcuouſly), yet I cannot be perſuaded that in any inſtance the formal Significations of theſe are the ſame, as Mr. *Johnſon* contends, *p.* 339. but ſtill think, with the great *Voſſius*, that the *Future* in RO is always a *Future-perfect*, that is, that there is a Time inſinuated when a thing yet future ſhall be finiſhed or paſt; and that even when a *Future* of the *Indicative* is joined with it, which, in Order of Time, ſhould be done before it; as, *Pergratum mihi feceris ſi diſputabis*, You ſhall have done, [ſhall do] me a great favour, if you ſhall diſpute, *Cic.* For, what hinders that we may not faintly hint at the finiſhing of an Action yet future, without formally conſidering the finiſhing of another Action on which it depends; and on the contrary? But if the promiſcuous Uſage of Tenſes one for another be ſufficient to make them formally the ſame, then we ſhall confound all Tenſes, and overthrow the very Arguments Mr. *Johnſon* makes uſe of againſt *Sanctius*, with reſpect to the Tenſes of the Infinitive.

14. The TO of the INFINITIVE is generally omitted after *May*, *Can*, *Might*, *Would*, *Could*, (which are ſometimes Verbs themſelves, and not the bare Signs of them:) alſo after *Muſt*, *Bid*, *Dare*, *Let*, *Help*, and *Make*.

15. But what is moſt to be regarded in the *Infinitive* is, that when it hath an Accuſative before it, it is commonly Engliſhed as the Indicative Mood, the Participle THAT being ſometimes put before it, but oftner underſtood. And it is carefully to be remarked, That the ſame Tenſes of the Infinitive are differently Engliſhed, according as the preceding Verb varies its Tenſes; as will appear in the following Scheme:

Dicit me ſcribere,	He ſays [that] I write.
Dixit me ſcribere,	He ſaid [that] I was writing.
Dicet me ſcribere,	He ſhall ſay [that] I am writing.

Dicit me ſcripſiſſe,		He ſays [that] I wrote, or did write.
Dixit me ſcripſiſſe,		He ſaid [that] I had written.
Dicet me ſcripſiſſe,		He ſhall ſay [that] I have written, or did write.
Dicit me ſcripturum,	[*eſſe,*]	He ſays [that] I will write.
Dixit me ſcripturum,	[*eſſe,*]	He ſaid [that] I would write.
Dicet me ſcripturum,	[*eſſe,*]	He ſhall ſay [that I will write.
Dicit me ſcripturum,	[*fuiſſe,*]	He ſays [that] I would have written.
Dixit me ſcripturum,	[*fuiſſe,*]	He ſaid [that] I would have written.
Dicet me ſcripturum,	[*fuiſſe,*]	He ſhall ſay [that] I would have written.

It will be of great Uſe to accuſtom the Learner to render the Infinitive after this Manner, both in *Engliſh* and *Latin*, eſpecially after he has been taught ſomething of Conſtruction: And then to cauſe him vary the Accuſative *Me* into *te*, *ſe*, *illum*, *hominem*, *fœminam*, &c. and theſe again into the Plural, *Nos*, *vos*, *ſe*, *illos*, *homines*, *fœminas*, &c. But he muſt be careful to make the Participles agree with them in Gender, Number, and Caſe.

NOTE, 1. That when the preceding Verb is of the *Preſent* or *Future* Tenſe, the *Fut.* of the *Infinit.* with *eſſe*, is rendered by SHALL, or WILL; and when it is of the *Perfect* Tenſe, the *Fut.* of the *Infinit.* is rendered by WOULD, as in the Examples above; and ſometimes by SHOULD; as, *Dixi te ſciturum eſſe*, I ſaid that you ſhould know.

NOTE, 2. That when the Preceding Verb is of the *Imperfect* or *Plu-perfect* Tenſes, the *Engliſh* of the *Infinitive* is the ſame as when it is of the *Perfect*.

16. The *Perfect* of the *Indicative* and *Subjunctive Paſſive*, made up with *Sum* or *Sim*, are Engliſhed by AM, ART, IS, ARE, inſtead of HAVE BEEN, when the Thing is ſignified to be juſt now paſt; as, *Vulneratus ſum*, I am wounded; *Opus finitum eſt*, the Work is finiſhed: *Cum tempora mutata ſint*, Since the Times are changed.

17. When it is made up by *fui*, it is frequently Engliſhed by WAS, WAST, WERE, WERT; as, *Roma fuit capta*, Rome was taken; As is alſo what is called the *Plu-perfect*, with *eram* and *eſſem*; as, *Labor finitus erat*, the Labour was finiſhed; *Si labor finitus eſſet*, If the Labour were finiſhed.

II. REMARKS on the LATIN Conjugations.

1. A Great Part of the *Paſſive* Voice, and ſome of the *Active*, is made up of two of its own *Participles*, and the auxiliary Verb *Sum*, (of which you have the full Conjugation, *p.* 60.) after this Manner:

The Participle Perfect with	*Sum* or *fui*	makes the	Perf.	Indicat.
	eram or *fueram*		Plup.	
	ſim or *fuerim*		Perf.	Subjunct.
	eſſem or *fuiſſem*		Plup.	
	fuero		Fut.	
	eſſe or *fuiſſe*		Perf.	Infinit.
The Participle Fut. Act. with	*eſſe* or *fuiſſe*		Fut.	Infinit.

Paſſive. Active.

2. Having, *p.* 38. laid it down as a probable Opinion, that every Part of a Verb, with all its *Participles* have a certain fixt Time, ſimple or compound, which they formally and of their own Nature ſignify, it will perhaps be here expected, that I ſhould account for that great Variety that is found

in the Paſſive Voice. To put this Matter in the cleareſt Light I am able, I muſt premiſe another Diviſion of the *Tenſes*, *Viz.* into PASSING and PAST; or into ſuch as import the Continuance of an Action or Thing, without regard to the ending or finiſhing of it; and ſuch as import that the Thing is finiſhed (or to be finiſhed) and done. Of the firſt ſort are the *Preſent*, *Imperfect*, and *Future-Imperfect*; of the ſecond ſort are the *Perfect*, *Plu-perfect*, and *Future-perfect*; See *p.* 37. From this Diviſion of the Tenſes, together with what we have formerly ſaid, we are furniſhed with an eaſy Method of diſtinguiſhing all the Parts of the Paſſive. Thus, for Inſtance, let the Subject of Diſcourſe be the building of an Houſe. 1. When I ſay, *Domus ædificatur*, I mean that it is juſt now a building, but not finiſhed. 2. When *Ædificabatur*, that it was then, or at a certain paſt Time, a building, but not then finiſhed. 3. *Ædificabitur*, that ſome time hence it ſhall be a building, without any formal Regard to the finiſhing of it. But when I make uſe of the *Participle perfect*, I always ſignify a Thing compleated and ended; but with theſe Subdiſtinctions, 1. *Ædificata eſt*; I mean ſimply, that it is finiſhed, without any regard to the Time when. 2. *Ædificata fuit*; it is finiſhed, and ſome time ſince has interveened. 3. *Ædificata erat*, it was finiſhed at a certain paſt Time referred to, with which it was contemporary. 4. *Ædificata fuerat*; it was finiſhed before a certain paſt Time referred to, to which it was prior. 5. *Ædificata erit*; it ſhall be finiſhed ſometime hereafter, either without regard to a particular Time when, or with reſpect to a certain Time yet future, with which its finiſhing ſhall be contemporary. 6. And laſtly, *Ædificata fuerit*; it ſhall be finiſhed and paſt before another Thing yet future, to which its finiſhing ſhall be prior. And thus we have nine different Times or Complications of Times, without confounding them with one another. But, then, how comes it to paſs that theſe are ſo frequently uſed promiſcuouſly? I anſwer, That this proceeds from one or more of theſe four Reaſons. 1. Becauſe it very frequently happens in Diſcourſe, that we have no Occaſion particularly to conſider theſe various Relations and Complications of Times; and 'tis the ſame Thing to our Purpoſe whether the Thing is, or was, done, or a doing; or whether it was done juſt now, or ſometime ago; or whether another Thing was (or ſhall be) contemporary with, or prior, to it; and the Matter being thus, we reckon ourſelves at liberty to take ſeveral Parts of the Verb at random, as being ſecure not only of being underſtood, but alſo that in theſe Circumſtances whatever we pitch on, even when examined by the Rules above, ſhall be found literally true. 2. It is uſual with us to ſtate ourſelves as preſent with, and as it were Eye-Witneſſes of the Things we relate, tho' really they were tranſacted long before, whence it is that we frequently uſe the Preſent inſtead of ſome paſt Time. 3. 'Tis to be remarked, that there are ſome Verbs, the Action whereof is in ſome Senſe finiſhed when begun; in which Caſe it will ſometimes be all one whether we uſe the paſſing or paſt Tenſes. And, 4. The Preſent Tenſe (which ſtrictly ſpeaking is gone before we pronounce it) is generally taken in a larger Acceptation, and ſometimes uſed for the Future, when we ſignify that the Execution is very near or (according to *Perizonius*) when, together with the Action, we take in alſo the Preparation to it. The Brevity we are confined to will not allow us to illuſtrate theſe Things with Examples. But by them I think we may account for the promiſcuous Uſage of the Tenſes, in both Voices; and what cannot be reduced to theſe, ſeems to be an Abuſe of the Language, and being very rarely to be met with, and perhaps only among the Poets, ought not to be made a common

Standard. I ſhall only add for a Proof that theſe Tenſes are not always to be uſed indifferently; that when we ſignify a Thing to be juſt now finiſhed, we cannot uſe *fui* or *fuerim*, or *fuiſſe*; but *ſum*, *ſim*, and *eſſe*.

3. Whether the Learner ſhould be obliged to get by Heart theſe Parts of the *Paſſive* that are ſupplied by *Sum*, or if they ſhould be referred to Conſtruction (to which they ſeem more naturally to belong) I leave to the Diſcretion of the Maſter, and therefore have put them in a ſmaller Character.

4. Beſides theſe Parts which are thus made up, all the other Parts may be reſolved into its own Participles, and the Verb *Sum*, though their Significations are not preciſely the ſame; as,

Amo,	*amabam*,	*amavi*	*amaveram*,	*amabo*,
Sum amans,	*eram amans*,	*fui amans*,	*fueram amans*,	*ero amans*, or *ſum amaturus*.
Amor,	*amabar*,	*amabor*,	*amer*,	*amarer*,
Sum amatus,	*eram amatus*,	*ero amatus*,	*amatus ſim*,	*amatus eſſem*.

5. The Participle in RUS with the Verb SUM is frequently uſed inſtead of the *Future* of the *Indicative*, eſpecially if *Purpoſe* or *Intention* is ſignified; as, *Profecturus ſum*, or *Proficiſcar*, I will go, *or* I am to go; and with *Sim* and *eſſem*, inſtead of the *Future-imperfect*, or *Plu-perfect* of the *Subjunctive*; as, *Non dubito quin ſit facturus*, I doubt not but he will do it; *Non dubitavi quin eſſet facturus*, I doubted not but he would do it; and not *quin fecerit*, *facerit* or *feciſſet*.

6. We have not joined ERO with FUERO for the *Future* of the *Subjunctive*, becauſe we thought it incongruous to couple Words of different Moods: Though it muſt be owned that it comes nearer in Signification to the *Fut.* of the *Subjunctive* than that of the *Indicative*; as, *Ovid*, *Qui cum victus erit*, is much the ſame as *Victus fuerit*: And ſo theſe ancient Lawyers, *Scævola*, *Brutus*, and *Manilius*, underſtood the Words of the *Artinian* Law, *Quod ſubreptum erit, ejus rei æterna auctoritas eſto*. But that a *Preterite* Time is there inſinuated, is owing not to the Word *erit*, but to the *Preterite-participle* with which it is joined, as they learnedly argue. See *Aulus Gellius*, *lib.* XVII. *cap.* 7.

7. We have omitted the Termination MINOR in the ſecond Perſon Plural of the *Imperative*, not thinking it fit to make that an ordinary Standard (as the common *Rudiments* do,) which is to be found only once or twice in *Plautus*, Epid 5. 2. *Facto opere arbitraminor*. And Pſeud 2. 2. *Pariter progrediminor*.

8. For the ſame Reaſon we have excluded the ancient Termination ASSO in the *Future Subjunctive* of the firſt Conjugation; as, *Excantaſſo* in the Laws of the 12 Tables. *Levaſſo* in *Ennius*; *Abjuraſſo*, *Invitaſſo*, *Cœnaſſo*, *Irritaſſo*, *Servaſſo*, &c. in *Plautus*; for *Excantavero*, *Levavero*, &c. to which may be added ESSO of the ſecond Conjugation; as, *Liceſſet*, Idem; *prohibeſſit*, Cic. for *Licuerit*, *prohibuerit*: To theſe ſome add *Juſſo* for *juſſero* in that of *Virg. Æn* 11. *v.* 467.

Cætera, qua juſſo, mecum manus inferat arma.

But tho' I was once of that Opinion, yet I now incline with *Voſſius* to think that it is only a *Syncope*; but not for the Reaſon brought for it by him, namely, that the other Examples in *ſſo* change *r* into *ſſ*, as, *Levaro*, *levaſſo*; but becauſe I believe theſe old Futures were formed not from the common Futures in *ero*, as he ſuppoſes, but from the ſecond Perſon ſing. of the Preſent of the Indic. by adding *ſo*; as, *levas*, *levaſſo*; *prohibes*, *prohibeſſo*; According to which Rule *Jubeo* muſt have formed *jubeſſo*, not *juſſo*.

9. Upon the ſame Account we have omitted the Future of the Infinitive in ASSERE, formed from ASSO; as, *Impetraſſere*, *reconciliaſſere*, *expugnaſſere*, in *Plautus*, for *impetraturum eſſe*, &c.

10. Tho' we frequently meet with *amaturus* and *amatus eſſe* vel *fuiſſe*, &c. in the *Nominative*, as, *Dicitur amaturus eſſe*, yet we have contented ourſelves with the Accuſative *amaturum* and *amatum*, as moſt common, reſerving the Diſtinction between theſe to Conſtruction. [See Page 85.]

11. The *Future* of the *Infinitive Paſſive* is made up of the *Firſt Supine*, and IRI the Infinitive Paſſive of EO: and therefore it is not varied in Numbers and Genders, as the Parts made up of the Participle with *Sum*.

12. But the Supine with IRE is not the Future of the Infinitive Active, as ſome teach; for ſuch Phraſes as theſe, *Amatum ire*, *Doctum ire*, are rather of the Preſent than Future Tenſe.

13. The Participle in DUS with *eſſe* and *fuiſſe*, is not properly the Future of the Infinitive Paſſive, as is commonly believed: For it does not ſo much import *Futurity*, as *Neceſſity*, *Duty*, or *Merit*. For there is a great difference between theſe two Sentences, *Dicit literas a ſe ſcriptum iri*, and *Dicit literas a ſe ſcribendas eſſe;* the firſt ſignifying, *That a Letter will be written by him*, or, *That he will write a Letter;* and the ſecond, *That a Letter muſt be written by me*, or, *He is obliged to write a Letter*. For though *Sanctius* and *Meſſieurs de Port Royal* contend that this Participle is ſometimes uſed for ſimple Futurity, yet I think *Perizonius* and *Johnſon* have clearly evinced the contrary.

14. It is to be noted, That the *Imperative* Mood wants the firſt Perſon both Singular and Plural, becauſe no Man can or needs command or exhort himſelf; Or, if he does, he muſt juſtle himſelf out of the firſt into the ſecond Perſon, as in that of *Catullus* ſpeaking to himſelf, *At tu Catulle, deſtinatus obdura;* But you *Catullus* continue obſtinate.

15. The *Preſent* of the *Subjunctive* is moſt frequently uſed inſtead of the *Imperative*, eſpecially in forbidding, after *Ne*, *nemo*, *nullus*, &c. as, *Valeas*, Farewell, for *vale; Ne facias*, Do it not, rather than *Ne fac*. And, ſometimes the *Future* of the *Subjunctive;* as, *Tu videris*, See you to it. *Ne dixeris*, Don't ſay it. And ſometimes alſo the *Future* of the *Indicative;* as, *Non occides*, Thou ſhalt not kill, for *Ne occide*, or *occidito*. *Sed valebis, meaque negotia videbis*, Cic. i. e. *Sed vale, meaque negotia vide. Referes ergo hæc & nuncius ibis Pelidæ, genitori*, Virg. i. e. *refer & ito*. But it is to be remarked, that none of theſe are proper *Imperatives;* for to the firſt is underſtood, *oro*, *rogo*, *peto*, or the like, with *ut;* as alſo to the ſecond, with *ut* underſtood, or *ne* expreſt; and the third is only a Command by Conſequence, becauſe of the Authority, Influence, or Power of the Speaker. For which Reaſon, and to keep the Moods from interfering with one another, we have excluded theſe from the *Imperative:* Though the common *Rudiments* take in the firſt, and *Alvarus* the ſecond and third. However, it is obſervable, that we ſhew moſt Civility and Reſpect, when we uſe the *Subjunctive*, and moſt Authority by the *Future* of the *Indicative*, and NTO of the *Imperative;* which laſt is the ordinary Strain in which Laws are delivered. But this Rule is not always followed.

16. The RIS of the ſecond Perſon *Paſſive* is more uſual than RE; and ERUNT of the *Perfect* of the *Indicative Active* than ERE; eſpecially in Proſe, in which, if a Vowel follow, they are very rarely to be met with.

III. REMARKS *upon* ENGLISH Verbs.

1. AN *Engliſh Verb* hath only two *Tenſes*, diſtinguiſhed by different *Terminations*, and both in the *Active Voice*, *viz.* the *Preſent* and *Preterite*. The *Preſent* is the Verb itſelf, and the *Preterite* is commonly made by adding *ed* to it, or *d*, when it ends in *e*; as, *Fill*, *filled*; *Love*, *loved*.

2. All the other Parts of the *Active*, and the whole *Paſſive*, is made up of the Auxiliary Verbs, *Do*, *Have*, *Shall*, *Will*, *May*, *Can*, and *Am*; as in Page 39, and in the Example, *To love*, Page 40, *&c.*

3. An Engliſh Verb hath different Terminations for the *Perſons* of the ſingular Number. The *Preſent* hath three or four. The firſt Perſon is the Verb itſelf; the ſecond ends in *eſt* or *ſt*; the third in *eth*, *es*, or *s*. The *Preterite* hath only two; the firſt commonly ending in *ed*, and the ſecond in *eſt* or *ſt*. But the third Perſon ſingular of the *Preterite*, and all the Perſons plural, both of it and the *Preſent*, cannot otherwiſe be diſtinguiſhed than by the Nominatives before them; which therefore can never be omitted, as in the *Latin*.

4. We have two *Participles*, the *Preſent* ending always in *ing*, and the *Preterite* ending regularly in *ed*, but very frequently in *en* and *t*.

5. There are a great many *Irregular Engliſh* Verbs; but it is to be noted, 1. That that *Irregularity* relates only to the Termination of the *Preterite* Tenſe, and the *Paſſive Participle*. 2. That it reaches only ſuch Words as are native, and originally *Engliſh*. 3. That it is to be found only in Words of one Syllable, or derived from Words of one Syllable. 4. That where the *Preterite* is regular, the *Paſſive Participle* is the ſame with it. Except *Hewed*, *Mowed*, *Shewed*, *Snowed*, *Sowed*; which have *Hewn*, *Mown*, *Shown*, *Snown*, *Sown*.

6. Theſe *Irregularities* may be reduced to the following heads:

(1.) The *d* is changed into *t* after *c*, *ch*, *ſh*, *f*, *k*, *p*, *x*; and after *ſ* and *th*, when pronounced hard; and ſometimes after *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, when a ſhort Vowel goes before it; as, *Plac't*, *Snatch't*, *Fiſh't*, *Walk't*, *Dwelt*, *Smelt*. But when a long Vowel goes before *p*, it is either ſhortened, or changed into a ſhort one; as, *Kept*, *Slept*, *Wept*, *Crept*, *Swept*, *Leapt*, from *keep*, *ſleep*, *weep*, *creep*, *ſweep*, *leap*; as alſo ſometimes before *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, and *v* turned into *f*; as, *Feel*, *felt*; *Dream*, *dreamt*; *Mean*, *meant*; *Leave*, *left*.

(2.) When the *Preſent* ends in *d* or *t*, the *Preterite* is ſometimes the ſame with it; as, *Read*, *Caſt*, *Hurt*, *Burſt*, *Hit*, *Quit*, and when two Vowels preceed, the laſt is left out; as, *Spread*, *ſpred*; *Lead*, *led*; *Feed*, *fed*; *Bleed*, *bled*; *Meat*, *met*. When a Conſonant comes before *d*, it is ſometimes changed into *t*; as, *Bend*, *bent*; *Lend*, *lent*; *Send*, *ſent*; *Rend*, *rent*; *Gird*, *girt*.

(3.) Moſt of the other irregular Verbs may be comprehended under the following Liſts:

I. *Such as have their Preterite and Participle Paſſive the ſame.*

Awake, awoke.	Find, found.	Pay, paid.	Sting, ſtung.
Abide, abode.	Flee, fled.	Say, ſaid.	Swing, ſwung.
Beſeech, beſought.	Fling, flung.	Seek, ſought.	Swim, ſwum.
Bind, bound.	Grind, ground.	Sell, ſold.	Teach, taught.
Bring, brought.	Gild, gilt.	Sit, ſat.	Tell, told.
Buy, bought.	Hang, hung.	Shine, ſhone.	Think, thought.
Catch, caught	Hear, heard.	Spin, ſpun.	Work, wrought.
Dig, dug.	Lay, laid.	Spring, ſprung.	Win, won.
Drink, drunk.	Loſe, loſt.	Stand, ſtood.	Wind, wound.
Fight, fought.	Make, made.	Stick, Stuck.	Wring, wrung.

II. *Such as have the Preterite and Participle different; as,*

Bear,	bore,	born.	Freeze,	froze,	frozen.	Shrink,	ſhrank,	ſhrunk.
Begin,	began,	begun.	Get,	got,	gotten.	Sink,	ſank,	ſunk.
Bid,	bad,	bidden.	Give,	gave,	given.	Slay,	ſlew,	ſlain.
Beat,	beat,	beaten.	Go,	went,	gone.	Slide,	ſlid,	ſlidden.
Bite,	bit,	bitten.	Grow,	grew,	grown.	Smite,	ſmote,	ſmitten.
Blow,	blew,	blown.	Hew,	hewed,	hewn,	Strike,	ſtruck,	ſtricken.
Chide,	chid,	chidden	Hide,	hid,	hidden.	Speak,	ſpoke,	ſpoken.
Chooſe,	choſe,	choſen.	Hold,	held,	holden.	Spit,	ſpat,	ſpitten.
Cleave,	clove,	cleft.	Know,	knew,	known.	Strive,	ſtrove,	ſtriven.
Come,	came,	come.	Ly,	lay,	lay'n.	Swear,	ſwore,	ſworn.
Crow,	crew,	crow'd	Ride,	rode,	ridden.	Swell,	ſwell'd,	ſwoln.
Dare,	durſt,	dared.	Ring,	rang,	rung.	Take,	took,	taken.
Do,	did,	done.	Riſe,	roſe,	riſen.	Tear,	tore,	torn.
Draw,	drew,	drawn.	Run,	ran,	run.	Thrive,	throve,	thriven.
Drive,	drove,	driven.	See,	ſaw,	ſeen.	Throw,	threw,	thrown.
Eat,	eat,	eaten.	Seethe,	ſod,	ſodden.	Tread,	trode,	troden.
Fall,	fell,	fallen.	Shake,	ſhook,	ſhaken.	Wear,	wore,	worn.
Fly,	flew,	flown.	Shear,	ſhore,	ſhorn.	Weave,	wove,	woven.
Forſake,	forſook,	forſaken	Shoot,	ſhot,	ſhotten.	Write,	wrote,	written.

Theſe Preterites, *Bare*, *Share*, *Sware*, *Tare*, *Ware*, *Clave*, *Gat*, *Begat*, *Forgat*, *Brake*, *Spake*, *Slang*, *Sprang*, *Swang*, *Wan*, *Stank*, *Sank*, are ſeldom uſed. But *Beſeech'd*, *Catch'd*, *Work'd*, *Digged*, *Gilded*, *Girded*, *Hang'd*, *Swam*, *Writ*, for *Beſought*, *Caught*, &c. are frequently to be met with.

NOTE, 1. That when the Verb ends in one *Conſonant*, that *Conſonant* is for the moſt Part doubled before *ing*, *ed*, *eſt*, *edſt*, and *eth*: as, *Worſhip*, *worſhipping*, *worſhipped*, *worſhippeſt*, *worſhippedſt*, *worſhippeth*: As alſo before *en*; as, *Bid*, *bidden*.

NOTE, 2. That the APOSTROPHUS (which was become too common in *Engliſh* Verbs; as, *Lov'd*, *lov'ſt*, for *loved*, *loveſt*,) begins now to be diſuſed by the moſt polite Writers in Proſe; but Poets ſtill uſe it, though not ſo much as formerly.

NOTE, 3. That the *Preterite Active* and the *Participle Paſſive* (when one Word ſerves for both) are thus diſtinguiſhed: When it hath nothing before it but the Nominative alone, or *have* or *had* with it, it is the *Preterite Active*; but when it hath any Part of the helping Verb AM, it is the *Participle Paſſive*.

EXCEPT *Come*, *Gone*, *Run*, *Set*, *Riſen*, *Fallen*, *Grown*, *Withered*; and ſuch like Intranſitive Verbs, which have frequently the *Paſſive Signs* AM, ART, *&c.* inſtead of HAVE in the *Perfect* Tenſe, and WAS, WAST, *&c.* inſtead of HAD in the *Pluperfect*; as, *Veni*, I am come; *Veneram*, I was come.

NOTE, 4. That though the Latin *Perfect* frequently anſwers both to HAVE and DID, (or the Preterite Termination ED, *&c.*) yet they ſeem to be thus diſtinguiſhed. DID or ED, *&c.* reſpects a certain paſt Time, in which the Thing was finiſhed or a finiſhing; as, *I wrote*, or *did write Yeſterday*: HAVE either ſpeaks of a Thing as but juſt now paſt, or at leaſt does not refer to any particular Time that it happened at; as, *I have written my Letter*, i. e. juſt now; *I have read of* Julius Cæſar, *i. e.* ſome time or other. The firſt of theſe is called the *Preterperfect Definite*, and the other the *Preterperfect Indefinite*.

NOTE, 5. That SHALL and WILL, by Mr. *Brightland*, are thus diſtinguiſhed:

In the Firſt Perſon ſimply SHALL fortells :
In WILL a Threat, or elſe a Promiſe dwells.
SHALL in the Second and the Third does threat ;
WILL ſimply then foretells the Future Fate.

By Mr. *Turner* thus :

WILL imports the *Will* or *Purpoſe* of the Perſon it is joined with ; SHALL implies the *Will* of another, who *promiſes* or *threatens* to do the Thing, or cauſe it to be done, *permits* it, *commands* it, or the like.

De Formatione Verborum.

QUatuor ſunt Terminationes Verbi, à quibus reliquæ omnes formantur ; *ſciz.* *o* Præſentis, *i* Præteriti, *um* Supini, & *re* Infinitivi, hoc modo ;

1. Ab *o* formantur *am* & *em*.

2. Ab *i* formantur *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, *ſſem*, & *ſſe*.

3. Ab *um* formantur *u*, *us*, & *rus*.

4. A *re* formantur reliquæ omnes ; nempe, *bam*, *bo*, *rem*, *a*, *e*, *i*, *ns*, *dus*, *dum*, *di*, *do*.

Of the Formation of Verbs.

THere are four Terminations of a Verb, from which all the reſt are formed ; namely o *of the Preſent*, i *of the Præterite*, um *of the Supine, and* re *of the Infinitive, after this Manner ;*

1. *From* o *are formed* am *and* em.

2. *From* i, ram, rim, ro, ſſe, *and* ſſem.

3. U, us, *and* rus, *are formed from* um.

4. *All other Parts from* re *do come ; as*, bam, bo, rem, a, e, *and* i, ns, *and* dus, dum, do, *and* di.

In every complete *Verb* there are commonly four PRINCIPAL PARTS, *viz.* the *Preſent* of the *Indicative* in O, the *Preterite* or *Perfect* in I, the firſt *Supine* in UM, and the *Preſent* of the *Infinitive* in RE. The firſt (which is therefore called the THEME or Root of the *Verb*) gives *Origin* to the whole Verb, either *mediately* or *immediately*. The *Preterite*, the *firſt Supine*, and the *Preſent* of the *Infinitive* come from it *immediately*, and all the reſt from them ; except the *Future* of the *Indicative* in *am*, and the *Preſent* of the *Subjunctive* in *em* or *am*, which by this Scheme, are alſo formed *immediately* from the *Preſent* in O.

It is to be noted, that the *Preterites* and *Supines* of the *Firſt Conjugation* end commonly in *avi* and *atum*, of the *Second* in *ui* and *itum*, and of the *Fourth* in *ivi* and *itum*. But the *Third Conjugation* cannot be reduced to any general Rule, and there are a great many exceptions in the other Three, which are therefore to be learned by daily Practice, till the Scholar is advanced to that Part of *Grammar* that treats particularly of them.

But the *Preſent* of the *Infinitive*, and all the other Parts of the Verb, are regularly formed after one fixt and uniform Manner.

In the Foregoing Rules of *Formation*, I have, for the Eaſe of the Memory, put the *Terminations* inſtead of the *Moods* and *Tenſes* ; but for the greater Plainneſs they may be thus expreſſed :

I. From the *Preſent* of the *Indicative* are formed the *Future* of the *Indicative* of the *Third* and *Fourth Conjugations* in *am;* and the *Preſent* of the *Subjunctive* of the *Firſt* in *em*, and of the other three in *am*.

II. From the *Perfect* of the *Indicative* are formed the *Plu-perfect* of it, the *Perfect*, *Plu-perfect*, and *Future* of the *Subjunctive*, and the *Perfect* of the *Infinitive*.

III. From the *Firſt Supine* is formed the *Laſt Supine*, the *Participle Perfect* and *Future Active*.

IV. From the *Preſent* of the *Infinitive* are formed the *Imperfect* of the *Indicative*, the *Future* of the ſame when it ends in BO, (*viz.* in the firſt and ſecond *Conjugations*) the *Imperfect* of the *Subjunctive*, the *Imperative*, the *Participles Preſent* and *Future Paſſive*, and the *Gerunds*.

NOTE, 1. That Verbs in IO of the *Third Conjugation* retain *i* before *unt*, *unto*, *ebam*, *am*, *ens*, *endus*, *endum;* but loſe it in the *Preſent* of the *Infinitive* and *Imperfect* of the *Subjunctive*. *Third*

NOTE, 2. That the *laſt Perſon Plur.* of the *Imperative* may be formed by adding *o* to the ſame *Perſon* of the *Preſent* of the *Indicative;* as, *Amant*, *amanto; docent*, *docento*.

NOTE, 3. That the *Paſſive Voice* is formed from the ſame *Tenſes* of the *Active*, (except where *Sum* is uſed) by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*.

NOTE, 4. That the *Preſent* of the *Infinitive Paſſive* of the *Third Conjugation* may be formed by taking *s* from the *Second Perſon* of the *Preſent* of the *Indicative Active;* as, *legis*, *legi;* or when the Verb is *Deponent*, by changing *or*, or *ior*, into *i;* as, *Proficiſcor*, *Proficiſci; morior*, *mori*.

NOTE, 5. That the *Preſent* of the *Infinitive Active*, and the *Second Perſon* of the *Indicative* and *Imperative Paſſive* in *re*, are always the ſame.

NOTE, 6. That the *Second Perſon Plural* of the *Preſent* of the *Indicative*, and of the *Imperative*, are the ſame in the *Paſſive* Voice.

NOTE, 7. That where any of the *Principle Parts* are wanting, theſe Parts are commonly wanting that come from them. For which Reaſon Grammarians gives *Supines* to a great many Verbs, which yet are not to be found in any Author, becauſe the Participles formed from them are found; and they ſuppoſe likewiſe that all *Deponent* Verbs of old have had the *Active* Voice, and conſequently *Supines*, though now loſt.

NOTE, 8. That all Verbs of the *Second Conjugation* end in *eo*, and all Verbs of the *Fourth* in *io*, except *eo* and *queo*. There are eight Verbs in *eo* of the *Firſt Conjugation*, viz. *beo*, *creo*, *ſcreo*, *meo*, *calceo*, *laqueo*, *nauſeo*, *nucleo*. There are Twenty-two in *io* of the *Firſt*, viz. *amplio*, *baſio*, *brevio*, *conſilio*, *crucio*, *furio*, *glacio*, *hio*, *lanio*, *luxurio*, *macio*, *nuncio*, *pio*, *propitio*, *radio*, *repudio*, *ſatio*, *ſaucio*, *ſocio*, *ſomnio*, *ſpolio*, *ſuavio*, or rather, *ſuavior*, *vario*, *vitio;* with ſome other leſs common; as, *decurio*, *ſuccenturio*, *faſcio*, *retalio*, *ſtrio*, *tertio*, &c. And Twelve of the *Third*, viz. *capio*, *facio*, *jacio*, *lacio*, *ſpecio*, *fodio*, *fugio*, *cupio*, *rapio*, *ſapio*, *pario*, *quatio*, with their Compounds.

It is not, in my Opinion, neceſſary to trouble the Learner with a particular Account how the reſpective Changes in the Moods, Tenſes, Numbers, and Perſons are made; they being obvious from the Examples above, in which I have diſtinguiſhed them from the *Body* or *Eſſential Part* of the *Verb* by a *Diviſion* or *Hyphen*. And perhaps this alone, without any other particular Rule, might be a ſufficient Direction. For to conjugate one Verb by the Example of another, we have no more to do, but inſtead of the *Eſſential Part* of the one (which is all that ſtands before *o*, *eo* or *io*, of the *Preſent* of the *Indicative*) to ſubſtitute the *Eſſential Part*

of the other, and then add to it the additional Syllables it receives in Conjugation, as before. Only we are to advert, 1. That in the *Preterita* and *Supines*, and the *Parts* that come from them, we are to reckon all before *i* and *um* for the Body of the Verb, adding the usual Syllables to it, as in the *Active Voice* of *Lego*. 2. In Verbs in *io* we are to retain or omit the *i*, as in *Note* 1.

There is yet another Way of the Formation of Verbs, differing only from the First Method in this, that what Parts according to it are formed from the Infinitive, are by this formed from the First or Second Person of the Present of the Indicative. But though this may be the more natural Way, yet the other is more easy and uniform.

De Verbis Irregularibus.

IRREGULARIA Verba vulgò recensentur octo, *viz. Sum, Eo, Queo, Volo, Nolo, Malo, Fero,* & *Fio*, cum Compositis.

Of IRREGULAR Verbs.

THE IRREGULAR Verbs are commonly reckoned Eight, viz. Sum, Eo, Queo, Volo, Nolo, Malo, Fero, *and* Fio, *with their Compounds.*

SUM.

Sum, fui, esse, *To be.*

INDICATIVUS.		*SUBJUNCTIVUS.*	
		Præsens.	
Sum,	*I am,*	Sim,	*I may* or *can be,*
Es,	*Thou art,*	Sis,	*Thou mayst* or *canst be,*
Est:	*He is:*	Sit:	*He may* or *can be:*
Sumus,	*We are,*	Simus,	*We may* or *can be,*
Estis,	*Ye are,*	Sitis,	*Ye may* or *can be,*
Sunt.	*They are.*	Sint.	*They may* or *can be.*
		Imperfectum.	
Eram,	*I was,*	Essem,	*I might*, &c. *be.*
Eras,	*Thou wast,*	Esses,	*Thou mightest be,*
Erat:	*He was:*	Esset:	*He might be:*
Eramus,	*We were,*	Essemus,	*We might be,*
Eratis,	*Ye were,*	Essetis,	*Ye might be,*
Erant.	*They were.*	Essent.	*They might be.*
		Perfectum.	
Fui,	*I have been,*	Fuerim,	*I may have been,*
Fuisti,	*Thou hast been,*	Fueris,	*Thou mayst have been,*
Fuit:	*He hath been:*	Fuerit:	*He may have been:*
Fuimus,	*We have been,*	Fuerimus,	*We may have been,*
Fuistis,	*Ye have been,*	Fueritis,	*Ye may have been,*
Fuerunt, *v.* -ere,	*They have been.*	Fuerint.	*They may have been.*

Pluſquam-perfectum.

Fueram,	*I had been,*	Fuiſſem,	*I might,* &c. *have*	or *had been.*
Fueras,	*Thou hadſt been,*	Fuiſſes,	*Thou mighteſt have*	
Fuerat:	*He had been:*	Fuiſſet:	*He might have*	
Fueramus,	*We had been,*	Fuiſſemus,	*We might have*	
Fueratis,	*Ye had been,*	Fuiſſetis,	*Ye might have*	
Fuerant.	*They had been.*	Fuiſſent.	*They might have*	

Futurum.

Ero,	*I ſhall* or *will be,*	Fuero,	*I ſhall have been,*
Eris,	*Thou ſhalt* or *wilt be,*	Fueris,	*Thou ſhalt have been,*
Erit:	*He ſhall* or *will be:*	Fuerit:	*He ſhall have been,*
Erimus,	*We ſhall* or *will be,*	Fuerimus,	*We ſhall have been,*
Eritis,	*Ye ſhall* or *will be,*	Fueritis,	*Ye ſhall have been,*
Erunt.	*They ſhall* or *will be.*	Fuerint.	*They ſhall have been.*

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſens.

Es *vel* Eſto,	*Be thou,*
Eſto:	*Let him be:*
Eſte *vel* Eſtote,	*Be ye,*
Sunto.	*Let them be.*

INFINITIVUS.

Præſ. Eſſe. *To be:*
Perf. Fuiſſe. *To have been.*
Fut. Futurum, eſſe *vel* fuiſſe. *To be about to be.*

PARTICIPIUM.

Fut. Futurus. *About to be.*

The Compounds of SUM are, *Adſum, abſum, deſum, interſum, præſum, obſum, ſubſum, ſuperſum, inſum, proſum,* & *poſſum.* The firſt eight are conjugated as the ſimple SUM: *Inſum* wants the Preterite and its Deſcendents; for we do not uſe *Infui, infuiſti, infueram,* &c.

¶ PROSUM, *To do good,* has a *d* where SUM begins with *e;* as,

IND. *Pr.* Pro-ſum, prod-es, prod-eſt: pro-ſumus, prod-eſtis, pro-ſunt.
Im. Prod-eram, prod-eras, prod-erat: prod-eramus, *&c.*

SUB. *Im.* Prod-eſſem, prod-eſſes, prodeſſet: prod-eſſemus, *&c.*

IMPERAT. Prod-eſto, prod-eſte. INFINIT. *Præſ.* Prod-eſſe.

POSSUM ſhould be *pot-ſum,* (as being compounded of *potis,* able, and *Sum*) but for the better Sound *t* is changed into *s* before another *s,* and retained before any other Letter: And for the ſame Reaſon *s* is always taken away. *Poſſem* and *Poſſe* are contracted for *Poteſſem, Poteſſe,* which are yet to be found in ſome old Authors; thus,

¶ Poſſum, potui, poſſe, *To be able.*

INDICATIVUS.

Præſ. Poſſum,	potes,	poteſt:	poſſumus,	poteſtis,	poſſunt.
Imp. Poteram,	poteras,	poterat:	poteramus,	poteratis,	poterant.
Perf. Potui,	potuiſti,	potuit:	potuimus,	potuiſtis,	potuerunt, *v.* -uere.
Pluſ. Potueram,	potueras,	potuerat;	potueramus,	potueratis,	potuerant.
Fut. Potero,	poteris,	poterit;	poterimus,	poteritis,	poterunt.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ. Poſſim,	poſſis,	poſſit:	poſſimus,	poſſitis,	poſſint.
Imp. Poſſem,	poſſes,	poſſet:	poſſemus,	poſſetis,	poſſent.
Perf. Potuerim,	potueris,	potuerit:	potuerimus,	potueritis,	potuerint.
Pluſ. Potuiſſem,	potuiſſes,	potuiſſet:	potuiſſemus,	potuiſſetis,	potuiſſent.
Fut. Potuero,	potueris,	potuerit:	potuerimus,	potueritis,	potuerint.

INFINITIVUS.

Præſ. Poſſe. *Perf.* Potuiſſe. *The reſt wanting.*

E O.

Eo, ivi, itum, ire, *To go.*

INDICATIVUS.

Præſ. Eo,	is,	it:	imus,	itis,	eunt.
Imp. Ibam,	ibas,	ibat:	ibamus,	ibatis,	ibant.
Perf. Ivi,	iviſti,	ivit:	ivimus,	iviſtis,	iverunt, *v.* ivere.
Pluſ. Iveram,	iveras,	iverat:	iveramus,	iveratis,	iverant.
Fut. Ibo,	ibis,	ibit:	ibimus,	ibitis,	ibunt.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ. Eam,	eas,	eat:	eamus,	eatis,	eant.
Imp. Irem,	ires,	iret:	iremus,	iretis,	irent.
Perf. Iverim,	iveris,	iverit:	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.
Pluſ. Iviſſem,	iviſſes,	iviſſet:	iviſſemus,	iviſſetis,	iviſſent.
Fut. Ivero,	iveris,	iverit:	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſ. I, ito: ite, itote, eunto.

INFINITIVUS.

Præſ. Ire.
Perf. Iviſſe.
Fut. Iturum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.

PARTICIPIA.

Præſ. Iens, *Gen.* euntis.
Fut. Iturus, -a, -um.

SUPINA.

1 Itum.
2 Itu.

GERUNDIA.

Eundum,
Eundi,
Eundo.

NOTE, 1. That in general Eo is a Verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

NOTE, 2. That of old, Verbs of the Fourth had their Imperfect in *ibam*, and Future in *ibo*, of which there are many Examples in *Plautus* and *Terence*, and ſome in *Virgil* and *Horace*.

After the ſame Manner the Compounds of EO are conjugated, *viz. Adeo, abeo, exeo, obeo, redeo, ſubeo, pereo, coeo, inco, præeo, anteeo, prodeo, prætereo, tranſeo; Adibam, adibo, adiens, adeuntis, adeundum*, &c. But *ambio* is a regular Verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

NOTE, That in the Compounds *ivi*, *iviſti*, &c. are ſeldom uſed, but they are contracted into *ii*, *iiſti*; as, *adii*, *adiiſti*, and ſometimes *adiſti*: So *adieram*, *adierim*, &c.

QUEO, *I can*, and NEQUEO, I *cannot*, are conjugated the ſame Way as *EO*, they only want the *Imperative* and the *Gerunds*; and the *Participles* are ſcarcely in uſe.

VOLO.

Volo, volui, velle, *To will*, or *be willing*.

INDICATIVUS.

Præſ. Volo,	vis,	vult:	volumus,	vultis,	volunt.
Imp. Vol-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat:	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Perf. Vol-ui,	-uiſti,	-uit:	-uimus,	-uiſtis,	-uerunt, *v.* -uere.
Plu. Vol-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat:	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
Fut. Volam,	voles,	volet:	volemus,	voletis,	volent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ. Velim,	velis,	velit:	velimus,	velitis,	velint.
Imp. Vellem,	velles,	vellet:	vellemus,	velletis,	vellent.
Perf. Vol-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit:	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
Pluſ. Vol-uiſſem,	-uiſſes,	-uiſſet:	-uiſſemus,	-uiſſetis,	-uiſſent.
Fut. Vol-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit:	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

INFINITIVUS. *PARTICIPIUM.*

Præſ. Velle. *Perf.* Voluiſſe. *Præſ.* Volens.

The reſt are wanting.

NOLO.

Nolo, nolui, nolle, *To be unwilling*.

INDICATIVUS.

Præſ. Nolo,	non-vis,	non-vult:	nolumus,	non-vultis,	nolunt.
Imp. Nol-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat:	-bamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Perf. Nol-ui,	-uiſti,	-uit:	-uimus,	-uiſtis,	-uerunt, *v.* -uere.
Pluſ. Nol-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat:	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
Fut. Nolam,	noles,	nolet:	nolemus,	noletis,	nolent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ. Nolim,	nolis,	nolit:	nolimus,	nolitis,	nolint.
Imp. Nollem,	nolles,	nollet:	nollemus,	nolletis,	nollent.

Perf. Nol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit: -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Pluſ. Nol-uiſſem, -uiſſes, -uiſſet: -uiſſemus, -uiſſetis, -uiſſent.
Fut. Nol-uero, -ueris, -uerit: -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

IMPERATIVUS.	*INFINITIVUS.*	*PARTICIPIUM.*
Præſ. Noli, nolite, / Nolito: nolitote.	*Pr.* Nolle. / *Per.* Nolluiſſe.	*Præſ.* Nolens. / *The reſt wanting.*

M A L O.

Malo, malui, malle, *To be more willing.*

INDICATIVUS.

Præſ. Malo, mavis, mavult: malumus, mavultis, malunt.
Imp. Mal-ebam, -ebas, -ebat: -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Perf. Mal-ui, -uiſti, -uit: -uimus, -uiſtis, -uerunt, *v.* -uere.
Pluſ. Mal-ueram, -ueras, -uerat: -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
Fut. Malam, males, malet, *&c. This is ſcarcely in Uſe.*

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ. Malim, malis, malit: malimus, malitis, malint.
Imp. Mallem, malles, mallet: mallemus, malletis, mallent.
Perf. Mal-uerim, -ueris, -uerit: -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Pluſ. Mal-uiſſem, -uiſſes, -uiſſet: -uiſſemus, -uiſſetis, -uiſſent.
Fut. Mal-uero, -ueris, -uerit: -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

INFINITIVUS.

Præſ. Malle. *Perf.* Malluiſſe.

NOTE, That *Volo*, *Nolo*, and *Malo*, retain ſomething of the Third Conjugation; for *Vis*, *vult*, *vultis*, are contracted of *Volis*, *volit*, *volitis*; and *o* is changed into *u*, for, of old, they ſaid *Volt*, *voltis*.

Nolo is compounded of *Non volo*, and *Malo* of *Magis volo*.

F E R O.

V O X A C T I V A.

Fero, tuli, latum, ferre, *To bring* or *ſuffer.*

INDICATIVUS.

Præſ. Fero, fers, fert: ferimus, fertis, ferunt.
Imp. Ferebam, ferebas, ferebat: ferebamus, ferebatis, ferebant.
Perf. Tuli, tuliſti, tulit: tulimus, tuliſtis, tulerunt, *v.* tulere.
Pluſ. Tuleram, tuleras, tulerat: tuleramus, tuleratis, tulerant.
Fut. Feram, feres, feret: feremus, feretis, ferent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ.	Feram,	feras,	ferat:	feramus,	feratis, ferant.
Imp.	Ferrem,	ferres,	ferret:	ferremus,	ferretis, ferrent.
Perf.	Tulerim,	tuleris,	tulerit:	tulerimus,	tuleritis, tulerint.
Pluſ.	Tuliſſem,	tuliſſes,	tuliſſet:	tuliſſemus,	tuliſſetis, tuliſſent.
Fut.	Tulero,	tuleris,	tulerit:	tulerimus,	tuleritis, tulerint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſ. Fer, / Ferto, ferto: ferte, / fertote, ferunto:

INFINITIVUS.

Pr. Ferre.
Perf. Tuliſſe.
Fut. Laturum eſſe. *vel* fuiſſe.

PARTICIPIA.

Præſ. Ferens.
Fut. Laturus, -a, -um.

SUPINA.

1 Latum.
2 Latu.

GERUNDIA.

Ferendum,
Ferendi,
Ferendo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Feror, latus, ferri.

INDICATIVUS.

Præſ. Feror, ferris, / ferre, fertur: ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.
Imp. Fer-ebar, -ebaris, / -ebare, -ebatur: -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
Perf. Latus ſum *vel* fui, latus es *vel* fuiſti, *&c.*
Pluſ. Latus eram *vel* fueram, latus eras *vel* fueras, *&c.*
Fut. Ferar, fereris, / ferere, feretur: feremur, feremini, ferentur.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ. Ferar, feraris, / ferare, feratur: feramur, feramini, ferantur.
Imp. Ferrer, ferreris, / ferrere, ferretur: ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.
Perf. Latus ſim *vel* fuerim, latus ſis *vel* fueris, *&c.*
Pluſ. Latus eſſem *vel* fuiſſem, latus eſſes *vel* fuiſſes, *&c.*
Fut. Latus fuero, latus fueris, *&c.*

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſ. Ferre, / Fertor: fertor: ferimini, feruntor.

INFINITIVUS.

Præſ. Ferri.
Perf. Latum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.
Fut. Latum iri.

PARTICIPIA.

Perf. Latus, -a, -um.
Fut. Ferendus, -a, -um.

NOTE, That *Fero* is a Verb of the Third Conjugation, *Fers, fert, fertis, ferto, ferte, ferrem, ferre, ferris, fertur, fertor;* being contracted of *Ferit, ferit, feritis, ferito, ferite, fererem, ferere, fereris, feritur* and *feritor.*

Alſo *Fer* is contracted of *fere;* which, in like Manner, has happened to the Imperatives of *Dico, duco, facio,* they having *dic, duc, fac,* inſtead of *dice, ducc, face.*

The Compounds of *Fero* are conjugated the ſame Way as the Simple; as, *Affero, attuli, allatum; aufero, abſtuli, ablatum; Differo, diſtuli, dilatum; Confero, contuli, collatum; Infero, intuli, illatum; Offero, obtuli, oblatum; Effero, extuli, elatum;* So *Circumfero, perfero, transfero, defero, profero, antefero, præfero.*

F I O.

Fio, factus, fieri, *To be made,* or *to become.*

INDICATIVUS.

Præſ.	Fio,	fis,	fit:	fimus,	fitis,	fiunt.
Imp.	Fiebam,	fiebas,	fiebat:	fiebamus,	fiebatis,	fiebant.
Perf.	Factus ſum *vel* fui,		factus es *vel* fuiſti, *&c.*			
Pluſ.	Factus eram *vel* fueram,		factus eras *vel* fueras, *&c.*			
Fut.	Fiam,	fies,	fiet:	fiemus,	fietis,	fient.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ.	Fiam,	fias,	fiat:	fiamus,	fiatis,	fiant.
Imp.	Fierem,	fieres,	fieret:	fieremus,	fieretis,	fierent.
Perf.	Factus ſim *vel* fuerim,		factus ſis *vel* fueris, *&c.*			
Pluſ.	Factus eſſem *vel* fuiſſem,		factus eſſes *vel* fuiſſes, *&c.*			
Fut.	Factus fuero,		factus fueris, *&c.*			

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſ. { Fi*, / Fito, } fito: { fite, / fitote, } fiunto.

INFINITIVUS.

Præſ. Fieri.
Perf. Factum eſſe *v.* fuiſſe.
Fut. Factum iri.

PARTICIPIA.

Perf. Factus, -a, -um.
Fut. Faciendus, -a, -um.

SUPINUM.

Factu.

---

* Though *Fi* is rejected by ſome Grammarians of great Note, yet we have given it a Place here, not only becauſe it is to be found in *Plautus,* but alſo in *Horace, Lib.* 2. *Sat.* 5. *ver.* 38. *Fi cognitor ipſe,* according to the beſt MSS. and Editions.

NOTE, 1. That *Fio* is the Paſſive of *Facio*, To make, (which is regular) inſtead of *Facior*, which is not in uſe: Yet the Compounds of *Facio*, which change *a* into *i*, are regular; as, *Afficior*, *affectus*, *affici*; *perficior*, *perfectus*, *perfici*.

NOTE, 2. That the Compounds of *Facio*, with Verbs, Nouns, or Adverbs, retain the *a*, and have their Imperat. Act. *fac*, and their Paſſive Form (when uſed) *fio*; as, *Calefacio*, *lucrifacio*, *benefacio*; *calefac*, *calefio*, &c. But theſe compounded with a Prepoſition change the *a* into *i*, and have *fice* and *ficior*. There are ſome compounded of *Facio* and a Noun, where *facio* is changed into *fico* of the Firſt Conjugation; as, *magnifico*, *ſignifico*.

To the *Irregular* Verbs may be reduced EDO, *to eat*, which in ſome of its Parts falls in with the Verb *Sum*; thus,

IND. *Præſ.* Edo, es, eſt: . . . eſtis. . . .
SUB. *Imp.* Eſſem, eſſes, eſſet: eſſemus, eſſetis, eſſent.
IMP. *Præſ.* Es *vel* eſto, . eſte *vel* eſtote. INFIN. Eſſe.

Likewiſe its Compounds, *Comedo*, *comes*, *comeſt*, &c. and *Exedo*, *exes*, *exeſt*, &c. But all theſe may likewiſe be regularly conjugated, *Edo*, *edis*, *edit*, &c. *Ederem*, *ederes*, *ederet*, &c.

Of DEFECTIVE Verbs.

THO' ſome of the *Irregular* Verbs already mentioned want ſome of their Parts, and upon that Account may be called alſo *Defective* Verbs, yet by DEFECTIVE *Verbs* here we chiefly underſtand ſuch as want conſiderable Branches, or are uſed only in few *Tenſes* and *Perſons*. We ſhall ſet down theſe that moſt frequently occur.

I. AIO, *I ſay*; INQUAM, *I ſay*; FOREM, *I ſhould be*; AUSIM, *I dare*; FAXIM, *I'll ſee to it*, or *I will do it*; AVE and SALVE, *God ſave you*, *Hail*, *Good-morrow*; CEDO, *Tell*, or *give me*; QUÆSO, *I pray*.

IND. *Præſ.* Aio, ais, ait: . . . . . aiunt.
IND. *Imp.* Ai-ebam, -ebas, -ebat: -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
IND. *Perf.* . . . . . aiſti, ...
IMPERAT. ai. [PARTICIP. *Præſ.* aians.]

INDIC. *Præſ.* Inquam, inquis, inquit: inquimus, inquitis, inquiunt.
INDIC. *Imp.* . . . . . inquiebat: . . . . . inquiebant.
INDIC. *Perf.* . . . . inquiſti, ...
INDIC. *Fut.* . . . . inquies, inquiet: . . . . . .
IMPERAT. inque, -ito. PARTICIP. *Præſ.* inquiens.

SUB. *Imp.* / *Pluſ.* Forem, fores, foret: foremus, foretis, forent.
INF. Fore, *to be*, or *to be about to be*, the ſame with *futurum eſſe*.

SUB. *Præſ.* Auſim, auſis, auſit: . . . . . .
SUB. *Perf.* Faxim, faxis, faxit: . . . . . .
SUB. *Fut.* Faxo, faxis, faxit: . . . . faxitis, faxint.

NOTE, That *faxim*, and *faxo* are uſed inſtead of *fecerim* and *fecero*.

IMPERAT. Ave, Aveto, Salve, Salveto, } avete. avetote. ſalvete. ſalvetote. } INF. avere. ſalvere.
IND. *Præſ.* Cedo, Quæſo, } cedite. quæſumus.

II. Theſe three Verbs; ODI, MEMINI, COEPI, have only the *Preterite* Tenſe, and what is formed from it, and therefore are by ſome called PRETERITE Verbs; thus,

Odi,	*oderam*,	*oderim*,	*odiſſem*,	*odero*,	*odiſſe*.
Memini,	*memineram*,	*meminerim*,	*meminiſſem*,	*meminero*,	*meminiſſe*.
Cœpi,	*cœperam*,	*cœperim*,	*cœpiſſem*,	*cœpero*,	*cœpiſſe*.

But under theſe they comprehend alſo the Signification of the other Tenſes; as, *Memini*, I remember, *or* I have remembered; *Memineram*, I remembered, *or* I had remembered, *&c.* So *Odi*, I hate, *or* I have hated; *Cœpi*, I begin, *or* I have begun. Though I am not fully ſatisfied as to this laſt, for I do not know any Example where *Cœpi* doth clearly ſignify the preſent Tenſe.

Memini hath alſo the Imperative, *Memento*, Remember thou; *Mementote*, Remember ye. Some add *Meminens*, Remembering, which is ſcarcely to be imitated.

To theſe ſome add NOVI, becauſe it frequently hath the Signification of the preſent, *I know*, as well as, I have known, though it comes from *Noſco*, which is complete.

NOTE, 1. That *Odientes* is to be found in *Petronius; Odiatur* in *Seneca; Cœpio* in *Plautus* and *Terence*. See *Voſſ. Analog. lib.* III. *cap.* 39.

NOTE, 2. That the Participles *Cœptus* and *Oſus*, with its Compounds, *Peroſus*, *Exoſus*, are in uſe among the beſt Authors; but *Perodi* and *Exodi* are not.

III. *Faris*, To ſpeak, wants the firſt *Perſon* of the *Preſ. Indic.* and perhaps the whole *Preſent* of the *Subjunctive*, for we do not ſay *For* or *Fer*, and rarely *Feris*, *fetur*, &c. So likewiſe *Daris* and *Deris*, but not *Dor* or *Der*, To be given. The Compounds of the firſt, as, *Effor*, *affor*, are rare; but the Compounds of the other, as, *Addor*, *Reddor*, are common.

IV. Moſt of the other defective Verbs are but ſingle Words, and rarely to be found, but among Poets; as, *Infit*, he begins; *Defit*, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a Verb with the Conjunction *Si*, as *Sis* for *Si vis*, If thou wilt; *Sultis*, for *Si vultis*, If ye will; *Sodes*, for *Si audes*, If thou dareſt.

Of IMPERSONAL Verbs.

THeſe are alſo a kind of *Defective* Verbs, which for the moſt part are uſed only in the *Third Perſon Sing.* They have the Sign IT before them in Engliſh; as, *Pœnitet*, It repents; *Placet*, It pleaſes: And are thus conjugated.

	Præſ.	*Imperf.*	*Perfect.*	*Pluſquamp.*	*Fut.*
IND.	Pœnitet,	pœnitebat,	pœnituit,	pœnituerat,	pœnitebit.
SUB.	Pœniteat,	pœniteret,	pœnituerit,	pœnituiſſet,	pœnituerit.
INF.	Pœnitere,	. . .	pœnituiſſe.		

Moſt Verbs may be uſed impersonally in the Paſſive Voice, eſpecially ſuch as otherwiſe have no Paſſive; as,

	Præſ.	*Imperf.*	*Perf.*	*Pluſquamp.*	*Fut.*
Ind.	Pugnatur,	pugnabatur,	pugnatum {eſt, fuit,	-atum {erat, fuerat,	pugnabitur.
Sub.	Pugnetur,	pugnaretur,	pugnatum {ſit, fuerit,	-atum {eſſet, fuiſſet,	-atum fuerit.
Inf.	Pugnari,	. . .	pugnatum {eſſe, fuiſſe,		pugnatum iri.

NOTE, 1. That IMPERSONALS are applied to any *Perſon* or *Number*, by putting that which ſtands before other Verbs, after the Impersonals, in the Caſes which they govern: as, *Pœnitet me, te, illum*, I repent, thou repenteſt, he repenteth, inſtead of *Ego pœniteo*, &c. which is ſcarcely Latin. *Placet mihi, tibi, illi*, It pleaſes me, thee, him; or, I pleaſe, thou pleaſeſt, *&c. pugnatur a me, a te, ab illo*, I fight, thou fighteſt, he fighteth, *&c.*

NOTE, 2. That *Impersonals* are not uſed in the *Imperative*, but inſtead of it we take the *Subjunctive*.

NOTE, 3. That *Impersonal* Verbs are very often uſed *perſonally*, eſpecially in the *Plural* Number; as, *Accidit, Contingit, Evenit, Pertinet, Decet, Dolet, Licet, Nocet, Patet, Placet, Præſtat, &c.* For we ſay, *Tu mihi ſola, places; Nulli noceo; Multa homini accidunt, contingunt, eveniunt; Parvum parva decent*, &c. But it is to be remarked, that they are generally *Impersonal*, when an *Infinitive* or *Subjunctive* Mood follows; for tho' I can ſay, *Tu places mihi*, yet I cannot ſay, *Si places audire*, but *ſi placet tibi audire*. Again, we cannot ſay, *Ego contigi eſſe domi*, but *Me contigit eſſe domi*, or *Mihi contigit eſſe domi*. Likewiſe *Evenit illum mori*, or *Ut ille moreretur*, but not, *Ille evenit mori*.

[*I ſhall not here enquire what is the* Words *underſtood to* Impersonal *Verbs, whether it is a* Noun *of the like* Signification; *as*, Pugna pugnatur, *or the Word* Res *or* Negotium, *or the* Infinitive *Mood. Tho' I incline to think that any one of theſe will not anſwer to them all, but that there are ſome to which the firſt, to others the ſecond, and to others the third, may be moſt fitly underſtood, as the Nature of the Verb and good Senſe ſhall direct us. This we are ſure of, that the Word* underſtood *can never be a Perſon properly ſo called, but a* Thing; *for which Reaſon, and the want of the two primary* Perſons, viz. *the* firſt *and* ſecond, *they are called* Impersonal, *tho' ſome are much offended with the Name.*]

CAP. IV.

De Participio.

TRia ſunt præcipuè conſideranda in Participio, viz. *Tempus*, *Significatio*, & *Declinatio*.

I. Tempora Participiorum ſunt Tria, *Præſens*, *Præteritum*, & *Futurum*.

Participia { Præſ. / Præt. / Fut. } Temp. deſinunt in { *ns.* / *tus, ſus, xus.* / *rus, dus.* }

II. Significatio Participiorum eſt vel *Activa*, vel *Paſſiva*, vel *Neutra*, ad modum verborum à quibus deſcendunt.

CHAP. IV.

Of PARTICIPLE.

THere are three Things eſpecially to be conſidered in a Participle, viz. Time, Signification, *and* Declenſion.

I. *The Tenſes of Participles, are three, the* Preſent, Preterite, *and* Future.

Particip. of the Tenſe end in { *Preſ.* / *Pret.* / *Fut.* } { ns. / tus, ſus, xus. / rus, dus. }

II. *The Signification of Participles is either* Active *or* Paſſive, or Neuter, *after the Manner of the Verbs from which they come.*

Participia { in *ns* & *rus* plerumque ſunt *Activa*. in *dus* ſemper *Paſſiva*. in *tus*, *ſus*, *xus*, plerumque ſunt *Paſſiva*, interdum verò *Activa*, vel etiam *Communia*.

III. Omnia Participia ſunt Adjectiva: quæ deſinunt in *ns* ſunt *Tertiæ Declinationis*, reliqua autem omnia *Primæ* & *Secundæ*.

Participles { *in* ns *and* rus *are generally* Active. *in* dus *always* Paſſive. *in* tus, ſus, xus, *are generally* Paſſive, *ſometimes* Active, *or alſo* Common.

III. *All Participles are Adjectives: Theſe which end in* ns, *are of the* Third Declenſion, *but all the reſt are of the* First *and* Second.

A PARTICIPLE is a kind of Adjective formed from a Verb, which in its Signification always imports ſome Time.

It is ſo called, becauſe it *partakes* of a Noun and a Verb, having Genders and Caſes from the one, Time and Signification from the other, and Number from both.

1. ACTIVE Verbs [See *Chap.* IX.] have two *Participles*, one of the *Preſent* Time ending in *ns;* as, *Amans*, Loving: And another of the *Future* ending in *rus;* as, *Amaturus*, About to love.

2. PASSIVE Verbs have likewiſe two *Participles*, one of the *Preterite* ending in *tus*, *ſus*, or *xus;* as, *Amatus*, Loved; *Viſus*, Seen; *Flexus*, Bowed; (to which ſome add one in *uus*, viz. *Mortuus*, Dead:) And another of the *Future* ending in *dus;* as, *Amandus*, To be loved.

3. NEUTER Verbs have two *Participles*, as the Active; as, *Sedens*, Sitting; *Seſſurus*, About to ſit.

4. *Active* INTRANSITIVE Verbs have frequently three *Participles*, as, *Carens*, Wanting; *Cariturus*, About to want; *Carendus*, To be wanted; *Dolens*, Grieving; *Doliturus*, About to grieve; *Dolendus*, To be grieved: And ſometimes four; as, *Vigilans*, Watching; *Vigilaturus*, About to watch; *Vigilatus*, Watched; *Vigilandus*, To be watched.

5. DEPONENT and COMMON Verbs have generally four *Participles;* as, *Loquens*, Speaking; *Locuturus*, About to ſpeak; *Locutus*, Having ſpoken; *Loquendus*, To be ſpoken; *Dignans*, Vouchſafing; *Dignaturus*, About to vouchſafe; *Dignatus*, Having vouchſafed, *or* being vouchſafed; *Dignandus*, To be vouchſafed.

NOTE, 1. That in ſome *Deponent* Verbs the *Participle Perfect* hath both an *Active* and *Paſſive* Signification, though that of the Verb itſelf is only Active; as, *Teſtatus*, Having teſtified, *or* being teſtified. So *Mentitus*, *Meditatus*, *Oblitus*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That it is eſſential to a Participle. I. That it come immediately from a Verb. II. That in its Signification it alſo include Time. Therefore *Tunicatus*, Coated; *Larvatus*, Maſked; and ſuch like, are not Participles, becauſe they come from Nouns, and not from Verbs. And, *Ignarus*, Ignorant; *Elegans*, Neat; *Circumſpectus*, Circumſpect; *Tacitus*, Silent; *Falſus*, Falſe; *Profuſus*, Prodigal, *&c.* are not Participles, becauſe they do not ſignify Time.

There are a kind of Adjective Nouns ending in UNDUS, which approach very near to the Nature of *Participles;* ſuch as, *Errabundus, Ludibundus, Populabundus.* They are formed from the *Imperf.* of the *Indic.* and their Signification is much the ſame with the *Participle* of the *Preſent* Time: only they ſignify *Abundance,* or a great deal of the Action, according to *A. Gellius, lib.* 11. *cap.* 15.; or, according to others, they ſignify the ſame with the *Participles* of *Frequentative* Verbs, when theſe are not in uſe. See *Gronovius* on *Gellius,* as above cited.

APPENDIX of Gerunds and Supines.

GERUNDS and SUPINES (which, becauſe of their near Relation to Verbs, are by ſome not improperly called *Participial* Words) are a Sort of *Subſtantive* Nouns expreſſing the Action of the Verb in general, or in the Abſtract. GERUNDS are *Subſtantives* of the ſecond Declenſion, and complete in all their Caſes, except the *Vocative.* SUPINES are Subſtantives of the fourth Declenſion, having only two Caſes, the *Accuſative* in UM, which makes the *Firſt Supine,* and the *Ablative* in U, which makes the *Second.*

[Voſſius, Lib. 8. Cap. 54. *thinks that the* Laſt Supine *may ſometimes be a* Dative; *as,* Durum tactu, *i. e.* tactui; *for the Datives of the* fourth *Declenſion of old ended in* u. *Alſo* Lib. 7. Cap. 8. *he takes Notice, that though theſe Supines have ſometimes other Caſes,* (*as,* irriſui eſſe,) *yet they are only reckoned Supines by Grammarians, when the* Firſt *come after Verbs of Motion, and the* Second, *after Adjective Nouns: Thus,* dignus irriſu *is a Supine* (*according to them*) Non ſine irriſu audientium, *is not.*]

De Indeclinabilibus Partibus Orationis.

CAP. V.

De Adverbio.

IN ADVERBIO potiſſimùm ſpectanda eſt ejus *Significatio.*

Adverbiorum Significationes variæ ſunt: earum verò præcipuæ ad ſequentia capita revocari poſſunt.

Of the Indeclinable Parts of Speech.

CHAP. V.

Of ADVERB.

IN an Adverb is chiefly to be conſidered its Signification.

The Signification of Adverbs are various: But the chief of them may be reduced to the following Heads.

ADVERB is an Indeclinable Part of Speech, which being joined to a Noun, Verb, or other Adverb, expreſſes ſome Circumſtance, Quality, or Manner of their Signification.

I. Adverbs denoting CIRCUMSTANCE, are chiefly thoſe of *Place, Time,* and *Order.*

I. Adverbs of PLACE are fivefold, *viz. Adverbs signifying Motion,*

(1) *in a Place,* (or Rest)

UBI?	*Where?*
Hic,	*Here.*
Illic, Isthic, Ibi,	*There.*
Intus,	*Within.*
Foris,	*Without.*
Ubique,	*Every where.*
Nusquam,	*No where.*
Alicubi,	*Some where.*
Alibi,	*Else where.*
Ubivis,	*Any where.*
Ibidem,	*In the same Place.*

(2) *to a Place,*

QUO?	*Whither?*
Huc,	*Hither.*
Illuc, Isthuc,	*Thither.*
Intro,	*To within.*
Foras,	*To without.*
Eo,	*To that Place.*
Alio,	*To another Place.*
Aliquo,	*To some Place.*
Eodem,	*To the same Place.*

(3) *towards a Place,*

QUORSUM?	*Whitherward.*
Versus,	*Towards.*
Horsum,	*Hitherward.*
Illorsum,	*Thitherward.*
Sursum,	*Upward.*
Deorsum,	*Downward.*
Antrorsum,	*Forward.*
Retrorsum,	*Backward.*
Dextrorsum,	*To the right Hand.*
Sinistrorsum,	*To the left Hand.*

(4) *from a Place,*

UNDE?	*From whence?*
Hinc,	*From hence.*
Illinc, Isthinc, Inde,	*From thence.*
Aliunde,	*From else where.*
Alicunde,	*From some Place.*
Sicunde,	*If from any Place.*
Utrinque,	*On both Sides.*
Superne,	*From above.*
Inferne,	*From below.*
Cœlitus,	*From Heaven.*
Funditus,	*From the Ground.*

(5) *through, or by a Place.*

QUA?	*Which Way?*
Hac,	*This Way.*
Illac, Isthac,	*That Way.*
Alia,	*Another Way.*

II. Adverbs of TIME are threefold, *viz.* such as signify,

(1) *Being in Time, either*

1. *Present,*

NUNC,	*Now.*
Hodie,	*To-day.*

2. *Past,*

TUNC, Tum,	*Then.*
Heri,	*Yesterday.*
Dudum, Pridem,	*Heretofore.*
Pridie,	*The Day before.*
Nudius tertius,	*Three Days ago.*
Nuper,	*Lately.*

3. *Future, remote; very near.*

JAM JAM,	*Presently.*
Mox,	*Immediately.*
Statim,	*By and by.*
Protinus,	*Instantly.*
Illico,	*Straightway.*
CRAS,	*To-morrow.*
Postridie,	*The Day after.*
Perendie,	*Two Days hence.*
Nondum,	*Not yet.*

4. *Indefinite.*

QUANDO?	*When?*
Aliquando, Nonnunquam, Interdum,	*Sometimes.*
Semper,	*Ever.*
Nunquam,	*Never.*
Interim,	*In the mean time.*
Quotidie,	*Daily.*

(2) *Continuance of Time.*

DIU,	*Long.*
Quamdiu?	*How long?*
Tamdiu,	*So long.*
Jamdiu, Jamdudum, Jampridem,	*Long ago.*

(3) *Vicissitude, or Repetition of Time.*

1. *Infinite,*

QUOTIES?	*How often?*
Sæpe,	*Often.*
Raro,	*Seldom.*
Toties,	*So often.*
Aliquoties,	*For several times.*
Vicissim, Alternatim,	*By Turns.*
Rursus, Iterum,	*Again.*
Subinde, Identidem,	*Ever and anon.*

2. *Definite, or in Number.*

SEMEL,	*Once,*
Bis,	*Twice.*
Ter,	*Thrice.*
Quater,	*Four times, &c.*

3. *Adverbs* of ORDER; as,

Inde,	*Then.*	Deinceps,	*So forth.*	Primò, -ùm,	*First.*
Deinde,	*Thereafter.*	Denuo,	*Of-new.*	Secundò, -ùm,	*Secondly.*
Dehinc,	*Henceforth.*	Denique,	*Finally.*	Tertiò, -ùm,	*Thirdly.*
Porro,	*Moreover.*	Poſtremo,	*Laſtly.*	Quartò, -ùm,	*Fourthly.*

II. The other *Adverbs* expreſſing QUALITY, MANNER, *&c.* are either *Abſolute* or *Comparative.*

ABSOLUTE, *denoting,*

1. QUALITY ſimply; *as,* Bene, *well;* malè, *ill;* fortiter, *bravely:* And innumerable others that come from Adjective *Nouns* or *Participles.*
2. CERTAINTY; *as,* Profectò, certè, ſanè, planè, næ, utique, ita, etiam, *truly, verily, yes;* quidni, *why not?* omnino, *certainly.*
3. CONTINGENCE; *as,* Fortè, forſan, fortaſſis, fors, *happily, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.*
4. NEGATION; *as,* Non, haud, *not;* nequaquam, *not at all;* neutiquam, *by no means;* minimè, *nothing leſs.*
5. PROHIBITION; *as,* Ne, *not.*
6. SWEARING; *as,* Herele, pol, edepol, mecaſtor, *by Hercules, by Pollux,* &c.
7. EXPLAINING; *as,* Utpote, videlicet, ſcilicet, nimirum, nempe, *to wit, namely.*
8. SEPARATION; *as,* Seorſum, *apart;* ſeparatim, *ſeparately;* ſigillatim, *one by one;* viritim, *Man by Man;* oppidatim, *Town by Town,* &c.
9. JOINING TOGETHER; *as,* Simul, unà, pariter, *together;* generaliter, *generally;* univerſaliter, *univerſally;* plerumque, *for the moſt part.*
10. INDICATION or POINTING out; *as,* En, ecce, *lo, behold.*
11. INTERROGATION; *as,* Cur, quare, quamobrem, *why, wherefore?* Num, an, *whether?* Quomodo, quî, *how? To which add,* Ubi, quò, quorſum, unde, quâ, quando, quamdiu, quoties.

COMPARATIVE, *denoting,*

1. EXCESS; *as,* Valde, maximè, magnopere, ſummopere, admodum, oppidò, perquam, longè, *very much, exceedingly;* nimis, nimiùm, *too much;* prorſus, penitus, omnino, *altogether, wholly;* magis, *more;* meliùs, *better;* pejus, *worſe;* fortiùs, *more bravely:* And optimè, *beſt;* peſſimè *worſt;* fortiſſimè, *moſt bravely;* and innumerable others of the *Comparative* and *Superlative* Degrees.
2. DEFECT; *as,* Ferme, ferè, propè, propemodùm, penè, *almoſt;* parum, *little;* paullo, paullulum, *very little.*
3. PREFERENCE; *as,* Potiùs, ſatiùs, *rather;* potiſſimùm, præcipuè, præſertim, *chiefly, eſpecially;* imò, *yēs, nay, nay rather.*
4. LIKENESS or EQUALITY; *as,* Ita, ſic, adeo, *ſo;* ut, uti, ſicut, ſicuti, velut, veluti, ceu, tanquam, quaſi, *as, as if;* quemadmodum, *even as;* ſatis, *enough;* itidem, *in like Manner.*
5. UNLIKENESS or INEQUALITY; *as,* Aliter, ſecus, *otherwiſe;* alioqui *or* alioquin, *elſe;* nedum, *much more* or *much leſs.*
6. ABATEMENT; *as,* Senſim, paullatim, perdetentim, *by degrees, piece-meal;* vix, *ſcarce;* ægre, *hardly, with difficulty.*
7. EXCLUSION; *as,* Tantùm, ſolùm, modò, tantummodo, duntaxat, demum, *only.*

NOTE, 1. That ADVERBS ſeem originally to have been contrived to expreſs compendiouſly in one Word, what muſt otherwiſe have required two or more; as, *Sapienter*, wiſely, for *cum ſapientia; hic*, for *in hoc loco; ſemper*, for *in omni tempore; ſemel*, for *una vice; bis*, for *duabus vicibus; Hercule*, for *Hercules me juvet*, &c. Therefore many of them are nothing elſe but *Adjective Nouns* or *Pronouns*, having the *Preposition* and *Subſtantive* underſtood; as, *quo, eo, eodem;* for *ad quæ, ea, eadem* [*loca*], or *cui, ei, eidem*, [*loco*]; for of old theſe Datives ended in *o*. Thus, *qua, hac, illac*, &c. are plain *Adjectives* in the *Abl. ſing. femin.* the Word *via*, a Way, and *in*, being underſtood. Many of them are Compounds; as, *quomodo*, i. e. *quo modo; quemadmodum*, i. e. *ad quem modum*; *quamobrem*, i. e. *ob quam rem*; *quare*, i. e. [*pro*] *qua re*; *quorſum*, i. e. *verſus quem* [*locum*]; *ſcilicet*, i. e. *ſcire licet*; *videlicet*, i. e. *videre licet*; *ilicet*, i. e. *ire licet*; *illico*, i. e. *in loco*; *magnopere*, i. e. *magno opere*; *nimirum*, i. e. *ni* [*eſt*] *mirum*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That of *Adverbs* of *Place*, theſe of the Firſt Kind anſwer to the Queſtion *ubi?* the Second to *quo?* the Third to *quorſum?* the Fourth to *unde?* and the Fifth to *qua?* To which might be added a Sixth, *Quouſque*, How far? anſwered by *Uſque*, until; *Hucuſque*, Hitherto; *Eouſque*, ſo far; *Hactenas*, hitherto, thus far; *Eatenus*, ſo far as; *Quadantenus*, in ſome Meaſure. But theſe are equally applied to *Place* and *Time*.

NOTE, 3. That *Adverbs* of *Time* of the Firſt Kind anſwer to *quando?* of the Second to *quamdiu*, and *quamdudum* or *quampridem?* of the Third to *quotics?*

NOTE, 4. That *Adverbs* of *Quality* generally anſwer to the Queſtion *quomodo?*

NOTE, 5. That ſome *Adverbs* of *Time*, *Place*, and *Order*, are frequently uſed the one for the other; as, *Ubi*, where *and* when; *inde*, from that Place, from that Time, thereafter, next; *hactenus*, thus far, with reſpect to Place, Time or Order, *&c.* Other *Adverbs* alſo may be claſſed under different Heads.

NOTE, 6. That ſome *Adverbs* of *Time* are either *paſt*, *preſent*, or *future*; as, *Jam*, already, now, by and by; *Olim*, long ago, ſometime hereafter.

NOTE, 7. That *Interrogative Adverbs* of *Time* and *Place*, doubled or with the Adjection *cunque*, anſwer to the Engliſh Adjection *ſoever*; as, *ubiubi*, or *ubicunque*, whereſoever; *quoquo*, or *quocunque*, whitherſoever, *&c.* And the ſame holds alſo in other *Interrogative* Words; as, *quiſquis*, or *quicunque*, whoſoever; *quotquot*, or *quotcunque*, how many ſoever; *quantuſquantus*, or *quantuſcunque*, how great ſoever; *qualiſqualis*, or *qualiſcunque*, of what Kind or Quality ſoever; *utut*, or *utcunque*, however, *or* howſoever, *&c.*

CAP. VI.

De Præpoſitione.

I. PRæpoſitiones quæ regunt Accuſativum ſunt viginti octo, *viz.*

Ad,	*To.*
Apud,	*At.*
Ante,	*Before.*

CHAP. VI.

Of PREPOSITION.

I. *THE Prepoſitions which govern the Accuſative are twenty-eight*, viz.

Adverſus,	*Againſt.*
Adverſum,	
Contra,	

Cis, Citra,	*On this Side.*
Circa, Circum,	*About.*
Erga,	*Towards.*
Extra,	*Without.*
Inter,	*Between, among.*
Intra,	*Within.*
Infra,	*Beneath.*
Juxta,	*Nigh to.*
Ob,	*For.*
Propter,	*For, hard by.*
Per,	*By, through.*
Præter,	*Beſides, except.*
Penes,	*In the power of.*
Poſt,	*After.*
Pone,	*Behind.*
Secus,	*By, along.*
Secundum,	*According to.*
Supra,	*Above.*
Trans,	*On the farther ſide.*
Ultra,	*Beyond.*

II. Præpoſitiones quæ regunt Ablativum ſunt quindecim, nempe,

A, Ab, Abs,	*From.*
Abſque,	*Without.*
Cum,	*With.*
Clam,	*Without the Knowledge of.*
Coram,	*Before.*
De,	*Of, Concerning.*
E, Ex,	*Of, out of.*
Pro,	*For.*
Præ,	*Before.*
Palam,	*With the Knowledge of.*
Sine,	*Without.*
Tenus,	*Up to.*

II. *The Prepoſitions which govern the Ablative are Fifteen,* viz.

III. Hæ quatuor interdum Accuſativum, interdum Ablativum regunt.

In	*In, into.*
Sub,	*Under.*
Super,	*Above.*
Subter,	*Beneath.*

III. *Theſe four govern ſometimes the Accuſative, and ſometimes the Ablative.*

A PREPOSITION is an indeclinable Word, ſhewing the Relation of one Subſtantive Noun to another.

NOTE, That *Pone* and *Secus* rarely occur: And *Prope*, nigh; *Uſque*, unto; *Circiter*, about; *Verſus*, towards; which are commonly reckoned among the *Prepoſitions* governing the *Accuſative;* and *Procul*, far, among thoſe governing the *Ablative*, are *Adverbs;* and do not govern a Caſe of themſelves, but by the Prepoſition *ad*, which is underſtood to the firſt four, and *a* or *ab* to the laſt. To which perhaps may be added *Clam*, which is joined very frequently with the *Accuſative*; as, *Clam patre*, or *patrem*; *a* being underſtood to the one, and *quod ad* to the other.

Beſides the ſeparate Uſe of theſe PREPOSITIONS, there is another Uſe ariſes from them, namely, their being put before a vaſt Number of Nouns and Verbs in *Compoſition*, which creates a great Variety, and gives a peculiar Elegance and Beauty to the *Latin* Tongue.

There are five or six *Syllables*, viz. AM, DI or DIS, RE, SE, CON, which are commonly called *Inseparable Propositions*, because they are only to be found in *compound* Words: However, they generally add something to the Signification of the Words with which they are compounded; thus:

AM,		*round about*,		ambio,	*to surround.*
Di,		*asunder*,		divello,	*to pull asunder.*
Dis,	signifies,		as,	distraho,	*to draw asunder.*
Re,		*again*,		relego,	*to read again.*
Se,		*aside or apart*,		sepono,	*to lay aside.*
Con,		*together*,		concresco,	*to grow together.*

CHAP. VII.

Of INTERJECTION.

AN INTERJECTION is an indeclinable Word thrown into Discourse, to signify some Passion or Emotion of the Mind.

Some of them express,

1. JOY; *as*, Evax, *hey, brave, io.*
2. GRIEF; *as*, Ah, hei, heu, eheu, *ah, alas, woes me.*
3. WONDER; *as*, Papæ, *O strange;* Vah, *hah.*
4. PRAISE; *as*, Euge, *well done.*
5. AVERSION; *as*, Apage, *away, begone, fy, tush.*
6. EXCLAIMING; *as*, Oh, proh, *O.*
7. SURPRISE or FEAR; *as*, Atat, *ha, aha.*
8. IMPRECATION; *as*, Væ, *wo, pox on't.*
9. LAUGHTER; *as*, Ha, ha, he.
10. SILENCING; *as*, Au, 'st, pax, *silence, hush, 'st.*
11. CALLING; *as*, Eho, io, ho, *soho, ho, O.*
12. DERISION; *as*, Hui, *away with.*
13. ATTENTION; *as*, Hem, *hah.*

NOTE, 1. That the same *Interjection* denotes sometimes one Passion and sometimes another; as, *Vah*, which is used to express *Joy*, and *Sorrow*, and *Wonder*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That some of them are *natural Sounds*, common to all Languages.

NOTE, 3. That *Nouns* are used sometimes for *Interjections;* as, *Malum!* With a Pox! With a Mischief! *Infandum!* O shame! Fy, fy; *Miserum!* O wretched! *Nefas!* O the Villany!

INTERJECTION is a Compendious Way of expressing a whole Sentence in one Word, and used only to represent the Passions and Emotions of the Soul, that the Shortness of the one might the sooner express the Suddenness and Quickness of the other.

CHAP. VIII.

Of CONJUNCTION.

A CONJUNCTION is an indeclinable Word that joins Sentences together; and thereby shews their Dependence upon one another.

Of theſe ſome are called,

1. COPULATIVE; *as*, Et, ac, atque, que, *and;* etiam, quoque, item, *alſo;* cum, tum, *both, and.* Alſo their Contraries, Nec, neque, neu, neve, *neither, nor.*
2. DISJUNCTIVE; *as*, Aut, ve, vel, ſeu, ſive, *either, or.*
3. CONCESSIVE; *as*, Etſi, etiamſi, tametſi, licet, quanquam, quamvis, *tho', altho', albeit.*
4. ADVERSATIVE; *as*, Sed, verum, autem, at, aſt, atqui, *but;* tamen, attamen, veruntamen, verumenimvero, *yet, notwithſtanding, nevertheleſs.*
5. CAUSAL; *as*, Nam, namque, enim, *for;* quia, quippe, quoniam, *becauſe;* quod, *that, becauſe.*
6. ILLATIVE or RATIONAL; *as*, Ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, *therefore;* quapropter, quocirca, *wherefore;* proinde, *therefore;* cum, quum, *ſeeing, ſince;* quandoquidem, *foraſmuchas.*
7. FINAL or PERFECTIVE; *as*, Ut, uti, *that, to the end that.*
8. CONDITIONAL; *as*, Si, ſin, *if;* dum, modo, dummodo, *provided, upon Condition that;* ſiquidem, *if indeed.*
9. EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE; *as*, Ni, niſi, *unleſs, except.*
10. DIMINUTIVE; *as*, Saltem, certè, *at leaſt.*
11. SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE; *as*, An, anne, num, *whether;* ne, annon, *whether, not;* necne, *or not.*
12. EXPLETIVE; *as*, Autem, vero, *now, truly;* quidem, equidem, *indeed,*
13. ORDINATIVE; *as*, Deinde, *thereafter;* denique, *finally;* inſuper, *moreover;* cæterum, *moreover, but, however.*
14. DECLARATIVE; *as*, Videlicet, ſcilicet, nempe, nimirum, *&c. to wit, namely.*

NOTE, 1. That the ſame Words, as they are taken in different Views, are both *Adverbs* and *Conjunctions;* as, *An, anne, &c.* are *Suſpenſive Conjunctions* and *Interrogative Adverbs.* The ſame may be ſaid of the *Ordinative* and *Declarative Conjunctions*, which under another View may be ranked under *Adverbs* of *Order* and *Explaining.* So likewiſe *Utinam*, which is commonly called an *Adverb* of *Wiſhing*, when more narrowly conſidered, is nothing elſe but the Conjunction *Uti* [that] with the Syllable *nam* added to it, and *Opto*, [I wiſh] underſtood; as, *Utinam adfuiſſes; Ut te Deus male perdat;* ſupple *Opto.* But ſince both of them are indeclinable, there is no great Need of being very nice in diſtinguiſhing them.

NOTE, 2. That other Parts of Speech compounded together, ſupply the Place of *Conjunctions;* as, *Poſtea*, afterwards; *præterea*, moreover; *propterea*, becauſe, *&c.* Which are made up of the Prepoſitions *poſt, præter*, and *propter*, with *ea* the Pronoun.

NOTE, 3. That ſome *Conjunctions*, according to their natural ORDER, ſtand firſt in a Sentence; as, *Et, aut, nec, ſi*, &c. Some, contrary to their natural Order, ſtand in the ſecond Place, *viz. Autem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim:* And ſome may indifferently be put either firſt or ſecond, *viz. Namque, etenim, ſiquidem, ergo, igitur, itaque*, &c. Hence aroſe the Diviſion of them into *Prepoſitive, Subjunctive*, and *Common.*

¶ CHAP. IX.

APPENDIX, containing ſome Obſervations concerning the various Diviſions and Significations of Words, eſpecially *Noun* and *Verb*.

1. ALL Words whatſoever are either *Simple* or *Compound*. A SIMPLE Word [*ſimplex*] is that which was never more than one; as, *Juſtus*, *lego*. A COMPOUND [*Compoſitum*] is that which is made up of two or more Words, or of a Word and ſome Syllabical Adjection; as, *Injuſtus*, *perlego*, *derelinquo*, *egomet*.

2. All Words whatſoever are either *Primitive* or *Derivative*. A PRIMITIVE Word [*Primitivum*] is that which comes from no other Word; as, *Juſtus*, *lego*. A DERIVATIVE [*Derivativum*] is that which comes from another Word; as, *Juſtitia*, *lectio*.

I. Beſides the more general *Diviſions* of *Nouns* and *Pronouns*, mentioned, *p.* 13. and 30. there are other particular *Diviſions* of them taken from their various *Significations* and *Derivations*: The moſt remarkable whereof are theſe:

I. With reſpect to *Signification*.

1. A COLLECTIVE [*Collectivum*] is a Subſtantive Noun, which ſignifies many in the ſingular Number; as, *Populus*, a People; *Exercitus*, an Army.

2. An INTERROGATIVE Noun or Pronoun [*Interrogativum*] is that by which we aſk a Queſtion; as, *Quis*? Who? *Uter*? Which of the two? *Qualis*? Of what Kind? *Quantus*? How great? *Quot*? How many? And theſe, when they are uſed without a Queſtion, are called INDEFINITES.

3. A RELATIVE Noun or Pronoun [*Relativum*] is an Adjective that has reſpect to ſomething ſpoken before; as, *Qui*, *ille*, *ipſe*, &c. *Alius*, *alter*, *reliquos*, *cætera*, *cum*, *qualis*, *quantus*, &c.

4. A PARTITIVE Noun or Pronoun [*Partitivum*] is an Adjective which ſignifies many ſeverally, and as it were one by one; as, *Omnis*, *nullus*, *quiſque*, &c. or a Part of many; as, *Quidam*, *aliquis*, *neuter*, *nemo*, &c.

5. A NUMERAL NOUN [*Numerale*] is an Adjective which ſignifies Number, (of which there are four principal Kinds:)

(1.) CARDINAL, [*Numerus Cardinalis*]; as, *Unus*, *duo*, *tres*, &c.

(2.) ORDINAL, [*Ordinalis*]; as, *Primus*, *ſecundus*, *tertius*, &c.

(3.) DISTRIBUTIVE, [*Diſtributivus*]; as, *Singuli*, *bini*, *terni*, &c.

(4.) MULTIPLICATIVE, [*Multiplicativus*]; as, *Simplex*, *duplex*, *triplex*, &c.

II. With reſpect to *Signification* and *Derivation*.

1. A PATRONYMICK Noun [*Patronymicum*] is a Subſtantive Noun derived from another Subſtantive proper, ſignifying one's Pedigree or Extraction; as, *Priamides*, the ſon of *Priamus*; *Priamis*, the Daughter of *Priamus*; *Æetias*, the Daughter of *Æetes*; *Nerine*, the Daughter of *Nereus*. *Patronymicks* are generally derived from the Name of the *Father*, but the Poets (for others ſeldom uſe them) derive them alſo from the *Grandfather*, or ſome other remarkable Perſon of the *Family*; nay, ſometimes from the *Founder* of a Nation or People, and alſo from Countries and Cities; as, *Æacides*, the Son, Grandſon, Great-grandſon, or one of the Poſterity of *Æacus*; *Romulidæ*, the *Romans*, from their firſt King *Romu-*

lus; Sicelis, Troas, a Woman of *Sicily*, of *Troy*, &c. *Patronymicks* of Men end in *des*; of Women in *is, as*, and *ne*. Theſe in *des* and *ne* are of the *Firſt*, and theſe in *is* and *as* of the *Third* Declenſion.

2. An ABSTRACT Noun [*Abſtractum*] is a Subſtantive derived from an Adjective expreſſing the Quality of that Adjective in general, without regard to the Thing in which the Quality is; as, *Bonitas*, Goodneſs; *Dulcedo*, Sweetneſs; from *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, ſweet. With reſpect to theſe Abſtracts, the Adjectives from which they come are called CONCRETES; becauſe, beſides the Quality, they alſo confuſedly ſignify ſomething as the Subject of it, without which they cannot make Senſe.

3. A GENTILE or PATRIAL Noun [*Gentile* or *Patrium*] is an Adjective derived from a Subſtantive proper, ſignifying one's Country; as, *Scotus, Macedo, Arpinas, Edimburgenſis, Taodunenſis;* a Man born in *Scotland, Macedonia, Arpinum, Edinburgh, Dundee;* from *Scotia, Macedonia, Arpinum, Edimburgum, Taodunum.*

4. A POSSESSIVE Noun [*Poſſeſſivum*] is an Adjective derived from a Subſtantive, whether proper or Appellative, ſignifying Poſſeſſion or Property; as, *Scoticus, Herculeus, Paternus, Herilis, Fœmineus*, of or belonging to *Scotland, Hercules*, a Father, a Maſter, a Woman; from *Scotia, Hercules, Pater, Herus, Fœmina.*

5. A DIMINUTIVE Noun [*Diminutivum*] is a Subſtantive or Adjective derived from another Subſtantive or Adjective reſpectively, importing a Diminution or Leſſening of its Signification; as, *Libellus*, a little Book; *Chartula*, a little Paper; *Opuſculum*, a little Work; from *liber, charta, opus; Parvulus*, very little; *Candidulus*, pretty white; from *parvus, candidus.* Theſe for the moſt part end in *lus, la*, or *lum*, and are generally of the ſame Gender with their Primitives.

6. A DENOMINATIVE Noun [*Denominativum*] is a Subſtantive or Adjective derived from another Noun; as, *Gratia*, Favour; *Vinea*, a Vineyard; *Senator*, a Senator; from *Gratus, virum, ſenex: Cœleſtis*, heavenly; *Humanus*, humane; *Aureus*, golden; from *cœlum, homo, aurum.*

7. A VERBAL Noun [*Verbale*] is a Subſtantive or Adjective derived from a Verb; as, *Amor*, Love; *Doctrina*, Learning; *Lectio*, a Leſſon; *Auditus*, Hearing; from *Amo, doceo, lego, audio; Amabilis*, lovely; *Capax*, capable; *Volucer*, ſwift; from *Amo, capio, volo.*

8. Laſtly, There are ſome Nouns derived from *Participles, Adverbs*, and *Prepoſitions;* as, *Fictitius*, counterfeit; *Craſtinus*, belonging to the Morrow; *Contrarius*, contrary; from *Fictus, cras, contra.*

NOTE, That the ſame Nouns, according to the different Reſpects in which they are conſidered, may ſometimes be ranked under one, and ſometimes under another of the above-mentioned Claſſes; as, *Quis* is an *Interrogative, Relative* or *Partitive; Pietas*, an *Abſtract* or *Denominative.*

II. *Pronouns* are divided into four Claſſes, *viz.*

1. DEMONSTRATIVES, *Ego, tu, ſui.*
2. RELATIVES, *Ille, ipſe, iſte, hic, is, quis, qui.*
3. POSSESSIVES, *Meus, tuus, ſuus, noſter, veſter.*
4. PATRIALS or GENTILES, *Noſtras, veſtras, cujas.*

Of them alſo two are INTERROGATIVES, *Quis* and *cujas.*

III. 1. Verbs, with reſpect to their *Figure* or *Frame*, are either SIMPLE; as, *Amo*, I love: Or, COMPOUND; as, *Redamo*, I love again.

2. With reſpect to their *Species* or *Origin*, are either PRIMITIVE; as, *Lego*, I read; or DERIVATIVE; as, *Lectito*, I read frequently.

3. With reſpect to their *Conjugation*, are either REGULAR; as, *Amo*: or IRREGULAR; as, *Volo, vis*, &c.

4. With reſpect to their *Conſtituent Parts*, are either COMPLETE; as, *Amo*: or DEFECTIVE; as, *Inquam*: or REDUNDANT; as, *Edo, edis, & es*, &c.

5. With reſpect to their *Perſons*, are either PERSONAL; as, *Amo*: or IMPERSONAL; as, *Pœnitet*.

6. With reſpect to their *Terminations*, they end either in O; as, *Amo*: or in R; as, *Amor*: or in M; as, *Sum*.

7. With reſpect to their *Signification*, Verbs are either *Subſtantive* or *Adjective*.

(1.) A SUBSTANTIVE Verb [*Subſtantivum*] is that which ſignifies ſimply the Affirmation of Being or Exiſtence; as, *Sum, fio, exiſto*, I am.

(2.) AN ADJECTIVE Verb [*Adjectivum*] is that which, together with the Signification of Being, has a particular Signification of its own; as, *Amo*: i. e. *Sum amans*, I am loving.

An *Adjective* Verb is divided into *Active, Paſſive*, and *Neuter*.

[1.] An ACTIVE Verb [*Activum*] is that which affirms Action of its Perſon or Nominative before it; as, *Amo, loquor, curro*.

[2.] A PASSIVE Verb [*Paſſivum*] is that which affirms Paſſion of its Perſon or Nominative before it; as, *Amor*.

[3.] A NEUTER Verb [*Neutrum*] is that which affirms neither Action nor Paſſion of its Nominative; but ſimply ſignifies the State, Poſture, or Quality of Things; as, *Sto, ſedeo, maneo, duro, vireo, flaveo, ſapio, quieſco*, &c. *To ſtand, ſit, ſtay, endure, to be green, to be yellow, to be wiſe, to reſt*.

An *Active Verb* is again divided into *Tranſitive* and *Intranſitive*.

[1.] An *Active* TRANSITIVE Verb [*Tranſitivum*] is that whoſe Action paſſeth from the Agent to ſome other Thing; as, *Amo Patrem*.

[2.] An *Active* INTRANSITIVE Verb [*Intranſitivum*] is that whoſe Action paſſeth not from the Agent to any other; as, *Curro*, I run; *Ambulo*, I walk.

When to any Verb you put the Queſtion WHOM? or WHAT? if a rational Anſwer can be returned, the Verb is *Tranſitive;* as, *Whom*, or *What do you teach?* Anſw. *A Boy, the Grammar:* If not, it is *Intranſitive;* as, *What do you run, go, come, live, ſleep*, &c. to which no rational Anſwer can be given, unleſs it be by a Word of like Signification, which ſometimes indeed theſe Verbs have after them; as, *Vivo vitam jucundam*, I live a pleaſant Life; *Eo iter longum*, I go a long Journey.

NOTE, 1. That the ſame Verb is ſometimes *Tranſitive*, and ſometimes *Intranſitive;* as, *Ver incipit*, the Spring begins, *Cic. Incipere facinus*, to begin an Action, *Plaut*.

NOTE, 2. That *Neuter* and *Intranſitive* Verbs are often Engliſhed with the Signs of a Paſſive Verb; as, *Caleo*, I am hot; *Palleo*, I am pale; *Jacobus abiit*, James is gone.

NOTE, 3. That *Neuter* and *Intranſitive* Verbs want the Paſſive Voice, unleſs *impersonally* uſed, as the *Intranſitive* Verbs moſt frequently and elegantly are; as, *Pugnatur, itur, ventum eſt*.

Though all Verbs whatſoever, with reſpect to their Signification, belong to ſome one or other of the foregoing Claſſes, yet becauſe Grammarians to-

gether with the *Signification* of Verbs, are obliged alſo to conſider their *Termination*, and finding that all *Active* Verbs did not end in *o*, neither all *Paſſives* in *or*, it was judged convenient to add to the former, two or three other *Claſſes* or *Kinds* of them, *viz. Deponent*, *Common*, and *Neuter-paſſive*.

[1.] A DEPONENT Verb [*Deponens*] is that which has a Paſſive Termination, but an Active or Neuter Signification; as, *Loquor*, I ſpeak; *Morior*, I die.

[2.] A COMMON Verb [*Commune*] is that which under a Paſſive Termination has a Signification either Active or Paſſive; as, *Criminor*, I accuſe, *or* I am accuſed; *Dignor*, I think, *or* I am thought worthy.

[3.] A NEUTER-PASSIVE [*Neutro-paſſivum*] is that which is half Active and half Paſſive in its Termination; but in its Signification is either wholly Paſſive; as, *Fio*, *factus ſum*, to be made: Or wholly Active or Neuter; as, *Audeo*, *auſus ſum*, To dare; *Gaudeo*, *gaviſus ſum*, To rejoice.

8. To omit the other Kinds of *Derivative* Verbs, which are not very material, there are three Kinds of them derived from Verbs, which deſerve to be remarked; *viz. Frequentatives*, *Inceptives*, and *Deſideratives*.

[1.] FREQUENTATIVES [*Verba frequentativa*] ſignify Frequency of Action. They are formed from the laſt Supine, by changing *atu* into *ito* from Verbs of the firſt, and *u* into *o* from Verbs of the other three Conjugations. They are all of the firſt; as, *Clamito*, To cry frequently, from *clamo*; *Dormito*, To ſleep often, from *dormio*. From them alſo are formed other Frequentatives: as, *Curro*, *curſo*, *curſito*; *jacio*, *jacto*, *jactito*; *pello*, *pulſo*, *pulſito*, and *pulto*.

[2.] INCEPTIVES [*Verba inceptiva*] ſignify, that a Thing is begun and tending to Perfection. They are formed from the Second Perſon Sing. Preſ. Ind. by adding *co*. They are all of the Third Conjugation, and want both Preterite and Supine; as, *Caleo*, *cales*, *caleſco*, I grow or wax warm.

[3.] DESIDERATIVES [*Verba Deſiderativa*] ſignify a Deſire of Action. They are formed from the laſt Supine by adding *rio*. They are all of the Fourth Conjugation, and generally want both Preterite and Supine; as, *Cœnaturio*, I deſire to ſup; *Eſurio*, I am hungry, *or* I deſire to eat.

9. Laſtly, In *Conſtruction*, Verbs receive Names from their more particular Significations; as, *Vocative* Verbs, or Verbs of *naming*, Verbs of *remembring*, of *want*, of *teaching*, of *accuſing*, &c.

In the preceeding Diviſion *of* Verbs, *with reſpect to their* Signification, *I have receded a little from the common* Method; *and in particular I have given a different Account of* Neuter *Verbs from that commonly received by* Grammarians, *who compriſe under them all* Intranſitive *Verbs, though their* Significations *be never ſo much* Active. *But this I did, partly from the Reaſon of the* Name, *which imports a* Negation *both of* Action *and* Paſſion; *and partly to give a diſtinct view of the* Significations *of* Verbs, *without regard to their* Terminations, *which in that reſpect are purely* accidental *and* arbitrary.

I have alſo excluded from the Diviſions *of* Verbs *thoſe called* NEUTRAL-PASSIVES [*Lat.* Neutra-paſſiva] *becauſe originally they are* Active *Verbs; for the primary* Signification of vapulo *is* pereo *or* ploro; *of* exulo, extra ſolum eo; *of* veneo, venum eo; *of* nubo, velo. Liceo *indeed is a very ſingular Verb, for in the* Active *Voice it ſignifies* paſſively, *and in the* Paſſive, actively.

PARS TERTIA.

De Sententiis, ſive Oratione.

SENTENTIA eſt quævis animi cogitatio, duabus aut pluribus vocibus ſimul junctis enunciata; ut, *Tu legis, Tu legis libros; Tu legis libros bonos; Tu legis libros bonos domi (a).*

PART THIRD.

Of SENTENCES, or SPEECH.

A *SENTENCE is any Thought of the Mind, expreſt by two or more Words put together; as,* You read; You read Books; You read good Books; You read good Books at home.

CAP. I.

De Syntaxi, ſive Conſtructione.

SYNTAXIS eſt recta vocum in Oratione Compoſitio.

Ejus partes ſunt duæ, *Concordantia & Regimen (b).*

CHAP. I.

Of SYNTAX, or CONSTRUCTION.

SYNTAX is the right Ordering of Words in Speech.

Its Parts are two, Concord *and* Government.

(a) We are now arrived at the principal Part of *Grammar;* for the great End of Speech being to convey our Thoughts unto others, it will be of little Uſe to us to have a Stock of Words, and to know what Changes can be made upon them, unleſs we can alſo apply them to Practice, and make them anſwer the great Purpoſes for which they are intended. To the Attainment of this End there are two things abſolutely neceſſary, *viz.* I. That in Speech we diſpoſe and frame our Words according to the Laws and Rules eſtabliſhed among thoſe whoſe Language we ſpeak. II. That in like Manner we know what is ſpoken and written, and be able to explain it in due Order, and reſolve it into the ſeveral Parts of which it is made up. The firſt of theſe is called SYNTAX or CONSTRUCTION, and the ſecond is named EXPOSITION or RESOLUTION. The firſt ſhews us how to ſpeak the Language ourſelves, and the ſecond, how to underſtand it when ſpoken by others. But it muſt be owned, that there is ſuch a neceſſary Connection between them, that he that is Maſter of the firſt cannot be ignorant of the ſecond.

(b) NOTE, 1. That the Difference between *Concord* and *Government* conſiſts chiefly in this, that in *Concord* there can no Change be made in the *Accidents;* that is, *Gender, Caſe, Number* or *Perſon* of the one, but the like Change muſt alſo be made in the other: But in *Government,* the firſt Word (if declinable) may be changed, without any Change in the ſecond.. In *Concord,* the firſt Word may be called the *Word directing,*

Concordantia eſt quando una dictio concordat cum altera in quibuſdam accidentibus.

Regimen eſt quando dictio regit certum caſum.

Concord *is when one Word agrees with another in ſome Accidents.*

Government *is when a Word governs a certain Caſe.*

I. *De Concordantia.*

COncordantia eſt quadruplex,

1. *Adjectivi* cum *Subſtantivo.*
2. *Verbi* cum *Nominativo.*
3. *Relativi* cum *Antecedente.*
4. *Subſtantivi* cum *Subſtantivo.*

REGULA I.

ADjectivum concordat cum Subſtantivo in genere, numero, & caſu; ut,

a *Vir* b *bonus.*
a *Fœmina* b *caſta.*
b *Dulce* a *pomum.*

I. Of CONCORD.

CConcord is fourfold,

1. *Of an* Adjective *with a* Subſtantive.
2. *Of a* Verb *with a* Nominative.
3. *Of a* Relative *with an* Antecedent.
4. *Of a* Subſtantive *with a* Subſtantive.

RULE I.

AN Adjective agrees with a Subſtantive in Gender, Number, and Caſe; as,

A good Man.
A chaſte Woman.
A ſweet Apple.

---

and the ſecond the *Word directed:* In *Government* the firſt is called the *Word governing*, and the ſecond, the *Word governed.*

NOTE, 2. That for the greater Eaſe both of Maſter and Scholar, we have noted theſe Words wherein the Force of each Example lieth, with the Letters [a] and [b]; the Word *Directing* or *Governing* with [a], and the Word *Directed* or *Governed* with [b]; or where there are two Words *Directing* or *Governing*, the firſt with [a], and the ſecond with [aa], and where two Words *Directed* or *Governed*, the firſt with [b], and the ſecond with [bb].

Number 1. NOTE, 1. That the Way to find out the *Subſtantive* is to aſk the Queſtion WHO or WHAT? to the *Adjective;* for that which anſwers to it is the *Subſtantive.* And the ſame Queſtion put to the *Verb* or *Relative*, diſcovers the *Nominative* or *Antecedent.*

NOTE, 2. That another *Adjective* ſometimes ſupplies the Place of a *Subſtantive;* as, *Amicus certus*, A ſure Friend; *Bona ferina*, Good Veniſon. *Homo* being underſtood to *Amicus*, and *Caro* to *Ferina.*

NOTE, 3. That the *Subſtantive* THING [*Negotium*] is moſt frequently underſtood; and then the *Adjective* is always put in the *Neuter* Gender, as if it were a *Subſtantive;* as, *Triſte* [ſupple *Negotium*] i. e. *Res triſtis*, A ſad Thing, *Bona* [ſupple *Negotia*] i. e. *Res bona*, Good Things.

REG. II.

2 VERBUM concordat cum Nominativo ante ſe in numero & perſona; ut,

a *Ego* b *lego.*
a *Tu* b *ſcribis.*
a *Præceptor* b *docet.*

RULE II.

A *VERB agrees with the Nominative before it in Number and Perſon; as,*

I read.
You write.
The Maſter teacheth.

ANNOTATIONES.

3 1. VERBA Subſtantiva, Vocandi & Geſtûs habent utrinque Nominativum ad eandem rem pertinentem; ut,

b *Ego* a *ſum* bb *diſcipulus.*
b *Tu* a *vocaris* bb Joannes.
b *Illa* a *incedit* bb *Regina.*

1. *Subſtantive Verbs, Verbs of Naming and Geſture have a Nominative both before and after them, belonging to the ſame thing; as,*

I am a Scholar.
You are named *John.*
She walks [as] a Queen.

4 2. ¶ EXCEP. Infinitivus Modus Accuſativum ante ſe habet; ut,

Gaudeo b *te* a *valere.*

2. ¶ *EXCEP. The Infinitive Mood has an Accuſative before it; as,*

I am glad that you are well.

Num. 2. NOTE, That the *Infinitive* Mood frequently ſupplies the Place of the *Nominative;* as, *Mentiri non eſt meum,* To lie is not mine, [or my Property.]

Num. 3. 1. *Subſtantive* Verbs are *Sum, fio, forem,* and *exiſto.*

2. Verbs of *Naming* are theſe Paſſives, *Appellor, dicor, vocor, nominor, nuncupor,* to which add, *Videor, exiſtimor, creor, conſtituor, ſalutor, deſignor,* &c.

3. Verbs of *Geſture* are, *Eo, incedo, venio, cubo, ſto, ſedeo, evado, fugio, dormio, ſomnio, maneo,* &c.

NOTE, That any *Verb* may have after it the *Nominative,* when it *belongs* to the ſame thing with the *Nominative,* before it; as, *Audivi hoc puer,* I heard it being [or when I was] a Boy. *Defendi rempublicam adoleſcens, non deſeram ſenex,* I defended the Commonwealth [when I was] a young Man, I will not deſert it [now that I am] old, *Cic.*

Num. 4. NOTE, That when the Participle THAT [in *Lat.* QUOD, or UT] comes between two *Verbs,* it is elegantly left out, by turning the *Nominative* Caſe into the *Accuſative,* and the *Verb* into the *Infinitive* Mood; as, *Aiunt regem adventare,* They ſay [that] the King is coming, rather than, *Aiunt quod rex adventat. Turpe eſt eos qui bene nati ſunt turpiter vivere.* 'Tis a ſhameful thing that they who are well born ſhould live baſely; rather than, *Ut ii turpiter vivant.* See *p.* 51.

3. ¶ *ESSE* habet eundem caſum poſt ſe quem ante ſe; ut,

b *Petrus cupit* a *eſſe* bb *vir doctus.*

Scio b *Petrum* a *eſſe* bb *virum doctum.*

b *Mihi* bb *negligenti* a *eſſe non licet.*

REG. III.

RELATIVUM *Qui, quæ, quod,* concordat cum Antecedente in genere & numero; ut,

a *Vir ſapit* b *qui pauca loquitur.*

1. Si nullus interveniat Nominativus inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit Verbo Nominativus; ut,

3. ¶ ESSE *hath the ſame Caſe after it that it hath before it; as,* 5

Peter deſires to be a learned Man.

I know that Peter is a learned Man.

I am not allowed to be negligent.

RULE III.

THE *Relative* Qui, quæ, quod, *agrees with the Antecedent in Gender and Number; as,* 6

He is a wiſe Man who ſpeaks little.

1. *If no Nominative comes between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative ſhall be the Nominative to the Verb; as,* 7

Num. 5. NOTE, 1. That we frequently ſay, *Licet nobis eſſe bonos,* We may be good. *Tibi expedit eſſe ſedulum,* 'Tis expedient for you to be diligent. *Nemini unquam nocuit fuiſſe pium,* It never hurted any Man that he hath been pious: But then the Accuſative, *Nos, te, illum,* &c. is underſtood: thus, *Licet nobis* [*nos*] *eſſe bonos,* &c.

NOTE, 2. That if *Eſſe,* and the other *Infinitives* of *Subſtantive* Verbs, Verbs of *Naming,* &c. have no *Accuſative* or *Dative* before them, the Word that follows (whether *Subſtantive* or *Adjective*) is to be put in the *Nominative;* as, *Dicitur eſſe vir,* He is ſaid to be a Man. *Non videtur eſſe facturus,* He ſeems not about to do it. *Nemo debet dici beatus ante ſuum obitum,* No Man ſhould be called happy before his Death.

Num. 6. NOTE, 1. That the *Antecedent* is a *Subſtantive* Noun that goes before the *Relative,* and is again underſtood to the Relative. Wherefore it will not be amiſs to teach the Scholar to ſupply it every where; thus, *Beware of Idleneſs, which* [Idleneſs] *is an Enemy to Virtue.* Cave ſegnitiem, quæ [*ſegnities*] eſt inimica virtuti. Nay, *Cicero* himſelf, but eſpecially *Cæſar,* frequently repeat the *Subſtantive;* as, *In oppidum perfugiſti, quo in oppido,* &c. You fled to a Town, in which Town, *Cic. Diem dicunt, quo die ad ripam Rhodani conveniant,* They appoint a Day, on which Day they ſhould meet upon the Bank of the River *Rhoſne, Cæſ.*

NOTE, 2. That when the *Relative* reſpects a whole *Sentence,* it is put in the Neuter Gender; as, *Joannes mortuus eſt, quod mihi ſummo dolori eſt,* John is dead, which is a great Grief to me.

NOTE, 3. That the *Perſon* of the *Relative* is always the ſame with that of its *Antecedent;* as, *Ego qui doceo,* I who teach. *Tu qui diſcis,* You who learn. *Lectio quæ docetur,* The Leſſon which is taught.

Præceptor a *qui* b *docet.*

The Maſter who teacheth.

8 2. At ſi interveniat Nominativus inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit ejus caſûs quem Verbum aut Nomen ſequens, vel Præpoſitio præcedens regere ſolent; ut,

Deus b *quem* a *colimus.*
b *Cujus* a *munere vivimus.*
b *Cui nullus eſt* a *ſimilis.*
a *A* b *quo facta ſunt omnia.*

2. *But if a Nominative come between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative ſhall be of that Caſe, which the Verb or Noun following, or the Prepoſition going before uſe to govern; as,*

God whom we worſhip.
By whoſe Gift we live.
To whom there is none like.
By whom all things were made.

ANNOTATIO.

9 ¶ Duo vel plura Subſtantiva ſingularia, Conjunctione [*&, ac, atque*, &c.] copulata habent Adjectivum, Verbum, vel Relativum plurale; ut,

a *Petrus & aa Joannes* b *qui* b *ſunt* b *docti.*

¶ *Two or more Subſtantives ſingular, coupled together with a Conjunction* [&, ac, atque, *&c.*] *have a Verb, Adjective,* or *Relative plural; as,*

Peter and John who are learned.

Num. 9. NOTE, 1. That when the *Subſtantives* are of different *Genders*, the *Adjective* or *Relative plural* muſt agree with the *Maſculine* rather than the *Feminine* or *Neuter;* as, *Pater & mater qui ſunt mortui*, The Father and Mother who are dead.

EXCEP. But if the *Subſtantives* ſignify things *without Life*, the *Adjective* or *Relative plural*, muſt be put in the *Neuter* Gender; as, *Divitiæ, decus, gloria in occulis ſita ſunt*, Riches, Honour, and Glory are ſet before your Eyes.

NOTE, 2. That when two or more *Nominatives* are of different *Perſons*, the *Verb plural* muſt agree with the *Firſt Perſon* rather than the *Second;* and the *Second* rather than the *Third;* as, *Si tu & Tullia valetis, ego & Cicero valemus*, If you and *Tullia* are well, I and *Cicero* are well.

NOTE, 3. That the *Adjective* or *Verb* frequently agree with the *Subſtantive* or *Nominative* that is neareſt them, and are underſtood to the reſt; as, *Et ego in culpa ſum & tu*, Both I and you are in the Fault: Or, *Et ego & tu es in culpa. Nihil hic deeſt niſi carmina*, There is nothing here wanting but Charms; *Nihil hic niſi carmina deſunt.* This Manner of Conſtruction is moſt uſual, when the different Words ſignify one and the ſame Thing, or much to the ſame Purpoſe; as, *Mens, ratio, & conſilium in ſenibus eſt*, Underſtanding, Reaſon, and Prudence is in old Men.

NOTE, 4. That *Collective* Nouns, becauſe they are equivalent to a *Plural* Number; have ſometimes the *Adjective* or *Verb* in the Plural Number; as, *Pars virgis cæſi.* A Part of them were ſcourged. *Turba ruunt*, The Crowd ruſh.

REG. IV.

UNUM Subſtantivum concordat cum alio eandem ſignificante in caſu; ut,

a *Cicero* b *Orator.*
a *Urbs* b *Edimburgum.*
a *Filius* b *deliciæ matris ſuæ (a).*

RULE IV.

ONE *Subſtantive agrees* 10 *with another, ſignifying the ſame thing in Caſe; as,*

Cicero the Orator.
The city *Edinburgh.*
A Son the Darling of his Mother.

II. *De Regimine.*

REGIMEN eſt triplex,

1. *Nominum.*
2. *Verborum.*
3. *Vocum indeclinabilium.*

II. Of GOVERNMENT.

GOVERNMENT *is threefold,*

1. Of Nouns.
2. Of Verbs.
3. Of Words indeclinable.

I. REGIMEN *Nominum.*

§ 1. *Subſtantivorum.*

REG. I.

UNUM Subſtantivum regit aliud rem diverſam ſignificans in Genitivo; ut,

a *Amor* b *Dei.*
a *Lex* b *Naturæ.*

I. *The* Government *of Nouns.*

§ 1. Of SUBSTANTIVES.

RULE I.

ONE *Subſtantive governs* 11 *another ſignifying a different Thing in the Genitive; as,*

The Love of God.
The Law of Nature.

ANNOTATIONES.

* 1. Si poſterius Subſtantivum adjunctum habeat Adje-

1. *If the laſt Subſtantive* 12 *have an Adjective of Praiſe,*

(a) To theſe four *Concords* ſome add a *Fifth, viz.* That of the *Reſponſive*, agreeing with its *Interrogative* in Caſe; as, *Quis dedit tibi pecuniam? Pater.* Who gave you Money? My Father. *Quo cares? Libro.* What do you want? A Book. But this ought not to be made a principal Rule; for the *Reſponſive*, or the Word that anſwers the Queſtion, does not depend upon the *Interrogative*, but upon the Verb, or ſome other Word joined with it; which, becauſe ſpoken immediately before, is generally underſtood in the Anſwer; thus, *Quis dedit tibi pecuniam? Pater* [dedit mihi pecuniam.] *Quo cares?* [*Careo*] *Libro.*

Num. 11. NOTE, 1. That OF or 's is the ordinary *Sign* of this *Genitive.*

NOTE, 2. That the Relative Pronouns, *Ejus, illius, cujus*, &c. Engliſhed, *His, her, its, their, thereof, whereof, whoſe*, have their *Subſtantives* generally underſtood; as, *Liber ejus*, [ſupple *Hominis, Fœminæ*, &c.] His Book *or* her Book, *Libri eorum*, [ſupple *Hominum, Fœminarum, &c.*] Their Books.

ctivum laudis vel vituperii, in Genitivo vel Ablativo poni poteſt; ut,

a *Vir* b *ſummæ* b *prudentiæ*, vel b *ſummâ* b *prudentiâ*.

a *Puer* b *probæ* b *indolis*, vel b *probâ* b *indole*.

or Diſpraiſe joined with it, it may be put in the Genitive or Ablative; as,

A Man of great Wiſdom.

A Boy of a good Diſpoſition.

13 * 2. Adjectivum in Neutro genere abſque Subſtantivo regit Genitivum; ut,

a *Multum* b *pecuniæ*.

a *Quid* b *rei?*

2. *An Adjective in the Neuter Gender without a Subſtantive governs the Genitive; as,*

Much Money.

What is the Matter?

---

§ 2. *Adjectivorum.*

REG. I.

14 * ADJECTIVA verbalia vel affectionem animi ſignificantia Genitivum poſtulant; ut,

a *Avidus* b *gloriæ*.

a *Ignarus* b *fraudis*.

a *Memor* b *beneficiorum*.

§ 2. Of ADJECTIVES.

RULE I.

VERBAL Adjectives, or ſuch as ſignify an Affection of the Mind require the Genitive; as,

Deſirous of Glory.

Ignorant of Fraud.

Mindful of Favours.

Num. 13. This is more elegant than *Multa pecunia; Quæ res?*

NOTE, 1. That theſe *Adjectives* which thus govern the *Genitive;* as if they were *Subſtantives*, are generally ſuch as ſignify *Quantity;* as, *Multum, tantum, quantum, plus, plurimum.*

NOTE, 2. That *Plus* and *Qui* always govern the *Genitive*, and upon that Account are by many thought real *Subſtantives.*

Num. 14. To this Rule belong,

1. *Adjectives* of DESIRE; as, *Cupidus, ambitioſus, avarus, ſtudioſus, curioſus.*

2. Of KNOWLEDGE; as, *Peritus, gnarus, prudens, callidus, providus, doctus, docilis, præſcius, præſagus, certus, memor, eruditus, expertus, conſultus*, &c.

3. Of IGNORANCE; as, *Ignarus, rudis, imperitus, neſcius, inſcius, incertus, dubius, anxius, ſollicitus, immemor.*

4. Of GUILT; as, *Conſcius, convictus, manifeſtus, ſuſpectus, reus.*

5. *Verbals* in AX and NS; as, *Edax, capax, ferax, fugax, tenax, pervicax:* And *Amans, cupiens, appetens, patiens, fugiens, ſitiens, negligens*, &c.

6. To which may be referred, *Æmulus, munificus, parcus, prodigus, profuſus, ſecurus.*

REG. II.

PARTITIVA & partitivè poſita, Comparativa, Superlativa, Interrogativa, & quædam Numeralia, Genitivo plurali gaudent; ut,

a *Aliquis* b *Philoſophorum.*
a *Senior* b *fratrum.*
a *Doctiſſimus* b *Romanorum.*

a *Quis* b *noſtrum?*
a *Una* b *Muſarum.*
a *Octavus* b *ſapientum.*

RULE II.

PARTITIVES and Words placed partitively, Comparatives, Superlatives, Interrogatives, and ſome Numerals, govern the Genitive plural; as, 15

Some one of the Philoſophers.
The elder of the Brothers.
The moſt learned of the *Romans.*
Which of us?
One of the Muſes.
The eighth of the wiſe Men.

REG. III.

ADJECTIVA ſignificantia commodum vel incommodum, ſimilitudinem vel diſſimilitudinem, regunt Dativum; ut,

a *Utilis* b *bello.*
a *Perniciosus* b *reipublicæ.*
a *Similis* b *patri.*

RULE III.

ADJECTIVES ſignifying Profit or Diſprofit, Likeneſs or Unlikeneſs, govern the Dative: as, 16

Profitable for War.
Pernicious to the Common-wealth.
Like his Father.

Num. 15. NOTE, 1. That it is eaſy to know when this Rule takes place, by reſolving the *Genitive* into *inter* with the *Accuſ.* or *de, e, ex,* with the *Abl.* as, *Optimus Regum,* The beſt of Kings, i. e. *Optimus inter Reges,* or *de, e, ex Regibus.*

NOTE, 2. That when there are two *Subſtantives* of different *Genders,* the *Partitive,* &c. rather agrees with the firſt than the laſt; as, *Indus fluminum maximus,* Cic. *Leo animalium fortiſſimus,* Plin. Otherwiſe it is of the ſame Gender with the *Subſtantive* it governs; as, *Pauca animalium, Unaquæque fœminarum.*

NOTE, 3. That *Partitives,* &c. take the *Genitive ſingular* of *Collective* Nouns, and do not neceſſarily agree with them in *Gender;* as, *Præſtantiſſimus noſtræ civitatis,* Cic. *Nympharum ſanguinis una.* Virg.

Num. 16. NOTE, 1. That ſome of theſe *Adjectives* govern alſo the *Genitive;* as, *Amicus, inimicus ſocius, vicinus, par, æqualis, ſimilis, diſſimilis, proprius, communis,* &c.

NOTE, 2. That *Adjectives* ſignifying *Motion* or *Tendency* to a Thing, chooſe rather the *Accuſative* with AD, than the *Dative;* ſuch as, *Proclivis, pronus, propenſus, velox, celer, tardus, piger,* &c. as,

Eſt piger ad pœnas Princeps, ad præmia velox, Ovid.

NOTE, 3. That *Adjectives* ſignifying *Fitneſs,* or the *contrary,* may have either of them; as, *Aptus, ineptus bello,* or *ad bellum.*

17 ¶ Verbalia in BILIS & DUS regunt Dativum; ut,
a *Amandus* vel a *amabilis* b *omnibus*.

Verbals in BILIS *and* DUS *govern the Dative; as,*
To be beloved of all Men.

REG. IV.

18 * ADJECTIVA dimenſionem ſignificantia regunt Accuſativum menſuræ; ut,
Columa ſexaginta b *pedes* a *alta*.

RULE IV.

ADJECTIVES ſignifying Dimenſion govern the Accuſative of Meaſure; as,
A Pillar ſixty Foot high.

REG. V.

19 * COMPARATIVUS regit Ablativum qui reſolvitur per QUAM; ut,
a *Dulcior* b *melle*.
a *Præſtantior* b *auro*.

RULE V.

THE Comparative Degree governs the Ablative, which is reſolved by Quam; *as,*
Sweeter than Honey.
Better than Gold.

REG. VI.

20 * DIGNUS, *Indignus, Contentus, Præditus, Captus, & Fretus:* Item, *Natus, Satus, Ortus, Editus,*

RULE VI.

THESE Adjectives, Dignus, Indignus, Contentus, Præditus, Captus, *and* Fretus: *Alſo,* Natus, Satus, Or-

---

Num. 17. OF or BY is the ordinary Sign of this *Dative*.

NOTE, That *Participles* of the *Preter Tenſe*, and *Paſſive* Verbs alſo, eſpecially among the Poets, have frequently the *Dative*, inſtead of the *Ablative* with A or AB; as, *Nullus eorum mihi viſus eſt*, None of them was ſeen by me; *Non audior ulli*, I am not heard by any.

Num. 18. The *Adjectives* of DIMENSION are *Altus*, high or deep; *craſſus* or *denſus*, thick; *latus*, broad; *longus*, long; *profundus*, deep. The Names of MEASURE are, *Digitus*, an Inch; *palmus*, an Handbreadth; *pes*, a Foot; *cubitus*, a Cubit; *ulna*, an Ell; *paſſus*, a Pace, *&c.*

NOTE, 1. That Verbs ſignifying *Dimenſion*, likewiſe have the *Accuſative* of *Meaſure*; as, *Patet tres ulnas*, It is three Ells large, *Virg.*

NOTE, 2. That ſometimes the Word of *Meaſure* is put in the *Ablative*; as, *Foſſa ſex cubitis alta, duodecim lata*, Liv. *Venter ejus exſtat ſeſquipede*, Perſ. And ſometimes, but rarely, in the *Genitive*; as, *Nec longiores duodenum pedum*, Plin.

Num. 19. Let the following Examples be obſerved and imitated: *Multo melior*, Much better. *Nihilo pejor*, Nothing worſe. *Major ſolito*, Greater than uſual. *Quo diligentior es, eo doctior evades*, The more diligent you are, the more learned you will become. *Quanto ſuperbior, tanto vilior*, The prouder, the leſs worth. *Nihil Virgilio doctius*, There is none more learned than *Virgil*.

x ſimilia, Ablativum petunt; t,

a *Dignus* b *honore.*
a *Præditus* b *virtute.*
a *Contentus* b *parvo.*
a *Captus* b *oculis.*
a *Fretus* b *viribus.*
a *Ortus* b *regibus.*

REG. VII.

ADJECTIVUM copiæ aut inopiæ regit Genitivum vel Ablativum; ut,

a *Plenus* b *iræ* vel b *irâ.*
a *Inops* b *rationis.*

II. REGIMEN *Verborum.*

§ 1. *Perſonalium.*

REG. I.

*SUM quoties poſſeſſionem, proprietatem, aut officium ſignificat, regit Genitivum; ut,

a *Eſt* b *regis punere rebelles.*

b *Inſipientis* a *eſt dicere non putâram.*
b *Militum* a *eſt ſuo duci parere.*

¶ Excipiuntur hi Nominativi, *Meum, tuum, ſuum,*

tus, Editus, *and the like, require the Ablative; as,*

Worthy of Honour.
Endued with Virtue.
Content with little.
Blind.
Truſting to his Strength.
Deſcended of Kings.

RULE VII.

AN *Adjective of Plenty* 21
or Want governs the Genitive or Ablative; as,

Full of Anger.
Void of Reaſon.

II. *The* Government *of* Verbs.

§ 1. Of PERSONAL Verbs.

RULE I.

SUM *when it ſignifies* 22
Poſſeſſion, Property, or Duty, governs the Genitive; as,

It belongs to the King to puniſh Rebels.
It is the Property of a Fool to ſay, I had not thought.
It is the Duty of Soldiers to obey their General.

¶ *Theſe Nominatives,* Me- 23
um, tuum, ſuum, noſtrum,

Num. 21. NOTE, 1. That *Diſtentus, gravidus, refertus;* and *orbus, vacuus, viduus,* chooſe rather the *Ablative: Indigus, compos,* and *impos,* the *Genitive.*

NOTE, 2. That ſome comprehend *Opus* and *Uſus,* when they ſignify *Neceſſity,* under this Rule; as, *Quid opus eſt verbis?* What Need is there of Words? *Ovid. Nunc viribus uſus,* Now there is Need of Strength, *Virg.* But it is to be remarked, that theſe are Subſtantive Nouns, the very ſame with *Opus, operis,* a Work; and *Uſus, uſus,* Uſe; and have the *Ablative* after them, becauſe of the *Prepoſition* IN, which is underſtood. Sometimes *Opus* hath the *Nominative* by *Num.* 3. as, *Dux nobis opus eſt,* We ſtand in need of a Leader. It is elegantly joined with the *Participle Perfect;* as, *Conſulto, maturato, invento, facto,* &c. *opus eſt,* We muſt adviſe, make haſte, find out, do, *&c.*

noſtrum, veſtrum; ut,
b *Tuum* a *eſt id procurare.*

REG. II.

24* MISEREOR, *miſereſco*, & *ſatago*, regunt Genitivum; ut,
a *Miſerere* b *civium tuorum.*
a *Satagit* b *rerum ſuarum.*

REG. III.

25 EST pro *habeo* regit Dativum perſonæ; ut,

a *Eſt* b *mihi liber.*
a *Sunt* b *mihi libri.*

REG. IV.

26 SUM pro *affero* regit duos Dativos, unum perſonæ, alterum rei; ut,

a *Eſt* b *mihi* bb *voluptati.*

REG. V.

27 VERBUM ſignificans commodum vel incommodum regit Dativum; ut,
Fortuna a *favet* b *fortibus.*
b *Nemini* a *noceas.*

veſtrum, *are excepted; as,*
It is your Duty to manage that.

RULE II.

MISEREOR, miſereſco, *and* ſatago, *govern the Genitive; as,*
Take pity on your Countrymen.
He hath his Hands full at home.

RULE III.

EST *taken for* habeo [to bring] *governs the Dative of a Perſon; as,*
I have a Book.
I have Books.

RULE IV.

SUM *taken for* affero [to bring] *governs two Datives, the one of a Perſon, and the other of a Thing; as,*
It is [*brings*] a Pleaſure to me.

RULE. V.

A *VERB ſignifying Advantage or Diſadvantage governs the Dative; as,*
Fortune favours the Brave.
Do hurt to no Man.

Num. 23. To theſe laſt may be added *Poſſeſſive* Nouns, ſuch as, *Regium, humanum, belluinum*, and the like; as, *Humanum eſt errare*, It is incident to Man to err.

NOTE, That to all theſe are underſtood *Officium, opus, negotium*, or ſome other Words to be gathered from the Sentence; as, *Me Pompei totum eſſe ſcis.* You know that I am wholly Pompey's, or in Pompey's Intereſt, *Cic.* i. e. *Amicum, fautorem*, or the like.

Num. 25. This is more elegant than *Habeo librum*, or *Habeo libros.*

So *Deſum* is uſed elegantly for *Careo;* as, *Deſunt mihi libri*, for *Careo libris*, I want Books.

Num. 26. NOTE, That other *Verbs*, ſuch as, *Do, duco, verto, tribuo, habeo, relinquo*, &c. may have two Datives; as, *Hoc tibi laudi datur*, You are praiſed for this, *Ne mihi vitio vertas*, Do not blame me.

To this may be referred ſuch Expreſſions as theſe, *Eſt mihi nomen Joanni*, my Name is John; which is more elegant than *Eſt mihi nomen Joannes* or *Joannis.*

Num. 27. This is a very general *Rule*, and (when we ſignify a Thing

REG. VI.

VERBUM activè ſignificans regit Accuſativum; ut,

a *Ama* b *Deum.*

a *Reverere* b *parentes.*

* *Recordor, memini, reminiſcor,* & *obliviſcor,* regunt Accuſativum, vel Genitivum; ut,

a *Recordor* b *lectionis* vel b *lectionem.*

a *Obliviſcor* b *injuriæ* vel b *injuriam.*

RULE VI.

A *VERB ſignifying actively governs the Accuſative; as,* 28

Love God.

Reverence your Parents.

Recordor, memini, reminiſcor, *and* obliviſcor, *govern the Accuſative or Genitive; as,* 29

I remember my Leſſon.

I forget an Injury.

---

to be acquired to any Perſon or Thing) almoſt common to all Verbs. But in a more particular manner are comprehended under it.

Verbs ſignifying,

1. To PROFIT or HURT; as, *Commodo, proficio, placeo, conſulo, noceo, officio.* But *lædo* and *offendo* govern the *Accuſative.*

2. To FAVOUR, to HELP, and their Contraries; as, *Faveo, annuo, arrideo, aſſentior, adſtipulor, gratulor, ignoſco, indulgeo, parco, adulor, plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, ſtudeo, ſupplico,* &c. Alſo *Auxilior, adminiculor, ſubvenio, ſuccurro, patrocinor, medeor:* Alſo *Derogo, detrabo, invideo,* &c but *Juvo* has the *Accuſ.*

3. To COMMAND, OBEY, or RESIST; as, *Impero, præcipio, mando; Pareo, ſervio, obedio, obſequor, obtempero, morigeror, famulor; Pugno, repugno, certo, obſto, reluctor, renitor, reſiſto, adverſor, refragor,* &c. But *Jubeo* governs the *Accuſ.*

4. To THREATEN or to be ANGRY with; as, *Minor, indignor, iraſcor, ſuccenſeo.*

5. To TRUST; as, *Fido, confido, credo.*

6. Verbs compounded with SATIS, BENE, and MALE; *Satisfacio, benefacio, benedico, malefacio, maledico.*

7. The COMPOUNDS of the Verb SUM; as, *Adſum, proſum, obſum.*

8. Verbs compounded with theſe ten PREPOSITIONS, *Ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, poſt, præ, ſub,* and *ſuper;* as, 1. *Adſto, accumbo, acquieſco, aſſideo, adhæreo, admoveo.* 2. *Antecello, anteeo, anteverto.* 3. *Conſono, commiſceo, condono, commorior.* 4. *Illudo, immorior, inhæreo inſideo, inhio, innitor, invigilo, incumbo.* 5. *Interpono, intervenio, interſero.* 6. *Obrepo, obtrecto, eccumbo.* 7. *Poſtpono, poſthabeo.* 8. *Præeo, præſtat* for *excellit, præluceo.* 9. *Succedo, ſubmitto, ſubjicio.* 10. *Superſto, ſupervenio.*

NOTE, 1. That TO, the Sign of the *Dative,* is frequently underſtood.

NOTE, 2. That TO is not always a Sign of the *Dative,* for, 1. Verbs of *Local Motion,* as, *Eo, venio, proficiſcor:* And, 2. Theſe Verbs, *Provoco, voco, invito, hortor, ſpecto, pertineo, attineo,* and ſuch like, have the *Accuſative* with the Prepoſition *ad.*

Num. 28. NOTE, That *Neuter* and *Intranſitive Verbs* have ſometimes an *Accuſative* after them. 1. Of their *own* or the *like* Signification; as, *Vivere vitam, Gaudere gaudium, Sitire ſanguinem, Olere hircum.* 2. When taken in a *Metaphorical* Senſe; as, *Ardebat Alexin,* i. e. *Vehementer amabat.*

VERBA activa alium unà cum Accuſativo caſum regentia.

30 * 1. VERBA accuſandi, damnandi & abſolvendi, cum Accuſativo perſonæ, regunt etiam Genitivum criminis; ut,

a *Arguit* b *me* bb *furti*.
b *Meipſum* bb *inertiæ* a *condemno*.
b *Illum* bb *homicidii* a *abſolvunt*.

31 * 2. Verba comparandi, dandi, narrandi, & auferendi, regunt Dativum cum Accuſativo; ut,

Active VERBS governing another Caſe together with the Accuſative.

1. *VERBS of Accuſing, Condemning, and Acquitting, with the Accuſative of the Perſon, govern alſo the Genitive of the Crime; as,*

He accuſes me of Theft.
I condemn myſelf of Lazineſs.
They acquit him of Manſlaughter.

2. *VERBS of Comparing, Giving, Declaring, and Taking away, govern the Dative with the Accuſative; as,*

Num. 30. 1. Verbs of ACCUSING are, *Accuſo, ago, appello, arceſſo, arguo, alligo, aſtringo, defero, incuſo, inſimulo, poſtulo*, &c.

2. Verbs of CONDEMNING are, *Damno, condemno, convinco*, &c.

3. Verbs of ABSOLVING are, *Solvo, abſolvo, libero, purgo*, &c.

NOTE, 1. That the *Genitive* may be changed into the *Ablative*, either with or without a *Prepoſition;* as, *Purgo te hac culpa*, or *de hac culpa*, I clear you of this Fault. *Eum de vi condemnavit*, He found him guilty of a Riot, *Cic.*

NOTE, 2. That the *Genitive*, properly ſpeaking, is governed by ſome *Ablative* underſtood, ſuch as, *Crimine, pœna, actione, cauſa;* as, *Accuſare furti*, i. e *Crimine furti. Condemnare capitis*, i. e. *pœna capitis.*

NOTE, 3. That *Crimine, pœna, actione, capite, morte*, ſcarcely admit of a *Prepoſition.*

Num. 31. 1. To Verbs of COMPARING belong alſo Verbs of *preferring* or *poſtponing.*

2. To Verbs of GIVING belong Verbs of *Receiving, promiſing, paying, ſending, bringing.*

3. To Verbs of DECLARING belong Verbs of *Explaining, ſhewing, denying*, &c.

4. Verbs of TAKING away are, *Aufero, adimo, eripio, eximo, demo, furripio, detrabo, tollo, excutio, extorqueo, arceo, defendo*, &c.

NOTE, 1. That many of theſe Verbs govern the *Dative*, by *Num.* 27.

NOTE, 2. That innumerable other Verbs may have the *Dative* with the *Accuſative*, when together with the *Thing done*, is alſo ſignified the *Perſon* or *Thing* to, or for whom it is *done;* as, *Doce mihi filium*, Teach me my ſon; *Cura mihi hanc rem*, Take care of this affair for me.

NOTE, 3. That *Compare, confero, compono*, have frequently the *Ablative* with *cum.*

b *Comparo* b *Virgilium* bb *Homero.*
I compare *Virgil* to *Homer.*

b *Suum* bb *cuique* a *tribuito.*
Give every Man his own.

a *Narras* b *fabulam* bb *surdo.*
You tell a Story to a deaf Man.

a *Eripuit* b *me* bb *morti.*
He rescued me from Death.

* 3. VERBA rogandi & docendi duos admittunt Accusativos, priorem personæ, posteriorem rei; ut,

3. *VERBS of Asking and* 32 *Teaching admit of two Accusatives, the first of a Person, and the second of a Thing; as,*

a *Posce* b *Deum* bb *veniam.*
Beg pardon of God.

a *Docuit* b *me* bb *Grammaticam.*
He taught me Grammar.

ANNOTATIO.

* Quorum activa duos Casus regunt, eorum passiva posteriorem retinent; ut,

The Passives of such Active 33 *Verbs as govern two Cases, do still retain the last of them; as,*

a *Accusor* b *furti.*
I am accused of Theft.

Virgilius a *comparatur* b *Homero.*
Virgil is compared to *Homer.*

a *Docear* b *Grammaticam.*
I am taught Grammar.

REG. VII.

*PRETIUM rei à quovis Verbo in Ablativo regitur; ut,

RULE VII.

THE Price of a Thing 34 *is governed in the Ablative by any Verb; as,*

Num. 32. NOTE, 1. That among the Verbs that govern two *Accusatives*, are also reckoned these following:

1. CELO; as, *Cela hanc rem uxorem*, Conceal this from your Wife, *Plaut.* But we can say also, *Celo te de hac re*, and *Celo tibi hanc rem.*

2. Verbs of CLOATHING; as, *Induit se calceos*, He put on his Shoes. But these have more commonly the *Ablative* of the Thing without a *Preposition*; as, *Vestit se purpura*, He cloathes himself with Purple. *Induo* and *Exuo* have frequently the *Person* in the *Dative*, and the *Thing* in the *Accusative*; as, *Thoracem sibi induit*, He put on his Breast-plate.

3. MONEO; as, *Id unum te moneo*, I put you in mind of this one Thing. But, unless it is some general Word, [as, *Hoc, illud, id*, &c.] *Moneo, admoneo, commonefacio*, have either the *Genitive*, as, *Admoneo te officii*, I put you in Mind of your Duty; or the *Ablative* with *de*; as, *De hac re te sæpius admonui*, I have frequently warned you of this.

NOTE, 2. That Verbs of *Asking* often change the *Accusative* of the *Person* into an *Ablative* with the *Preposition*; as, *Oro, exoro, peto, postulo, hoc a te*; I intreat this of you. Some always; as, *Contendo, quæro, scitor, scisscitor hoc a te.* Finally, some have the *Accusative* of the *Person*, and the *Ablative* of the *Thing* with *de*; as, *Interrogo, consulo, percantor, te de hac re.*

a *Emi librum* b *duobus assibus.*
I bought a Book for two Shillings.

a *Vendidit hic* a *auro patriam.*
This Man sold his Country for Gold.

Demosthenes a *docuit* b *talento.*
Demosthenes taught for a Talent.

35 * Excipiuntur hi Genitivi, *Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*; ut,

These Genitives, Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, *are excepted; as*,

b *Quanti* a *constitit?*
Asse & b *pluris.*
How much cost it?
A Shilling and more.

36 * VERBA æstimandi regunt hujusmodi Genitivos, *Magni, parvi, nihili*, &c. ut,

VERBS of Valuing govern such Genitives as these, Magni, parvi, nihili, *&c. as*,

a *Æstimo te* b *magni.*
I value you much.

REG. VIII.

RULE VIII.

37 * VERBA copiæ & inopiæ plerumque Ablativum regunt; ut,

VERBS of Plenty and Scarceness for the most part govern the Ablative: as,

a *Abundat* b *divitiis.*
He abounds in riches.

a *Caret omni* b *culpâ.*
He has no Fault.

38 * *Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, regunt Ablativum; ut,

Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, *govern the Ablative; as*,

a *Utitur* b *fraude.*
He uses Deceit.

a *Abutitur* b *libris.*
He abuses Books.

Num. 35. NOTE, That if the *Substantive* be expressed, they are put in the *Ablative; as, Quanto pretio? Minore mercede.*

Num. 36. 1. Verbs of *Valuing* are, *Æstimo, pendo, facio, habeo, duco, puto, taxo.*

2. The rest of the Genitives are, *Minoris, minimi, tanti, quanti, pluris, majoris, plurimi, maximi, nauci, flocci, pili, assis, teruncii, hujus:* Also *Æqui* and *boni* after *facio* and *consulo.*

NOTE, 1. That we also say, *Æstimo magno, parvo*, supple *pretio.*

NOTE, 2. That *Alvarus* excludes *majoris*, as wanting Authority. But there is an Example of it to be found in *Phædrus*, II. 5. 25.

Multo majoris alapæ mecum veneunt

Num. 37. Sometimes they have the Genitive; as, *Æget æris*, He wants Money, *Hor. Implentur veteris Bacchi*, They are filled with old Wine, *Virg.*

NOTE, That Verbs of *Loading* and *Unloading*, and the like, belong to this Rule; as, *Navis oneratur mercibus*, The Ship is loaded with Goods. *Levabo te hoc onere*, I will ease you of this Burden. *Liberavit nos metu*, He delivered us from Fear.

Num. 38. To these Verbs add, *Niter gaudeo, muto, deno, muncro, com-*

§ 2. *Regimen Verborum Impersonalium.*

REG. IX.

VERBUM impersonale regit Dativum; ut,

a *Expedit* b *reipublicæ.*
a *Licet* b *nemini peccare.*

* EXCEP. 1. *Refert* & *Interest* Genitivum postulant; ut,

a *Refert* b *patris.*
a *Interest* b *omnium.*

* At *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra,* ponuntur in Accusativo plurali; ut,

Non b *mea* a *refert.*

* EXCEP. 2. Hæc quinque, *Miseret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet,* & *piget,* regunt Accusativum personæ, cum Genitivo rei; ut,

a *Miseret* b *me* bb *tui.*
a *Pœnitet* b *me* bb *peccati.*
a *Tædet* b *me* bb *vitæ.*

* EXCEP. 3. Hæc quatuor, *Decet, delectat, juvat, oportet,* regunt Accusativum personæ cum Infinitivo; ut,

§ 2. The Government of IMPERSONAL Verbs.

RULE IX.

39 AN *Impersonal Verb governs the Dative; as,*

It is profitable for the State.
No Man is allowed to sin.

40 *EXCEPT.* 1. Refert *and* Interest *require the Genitive; as,*

It concerns my Father.
It is the Interest of all.

41 *But* mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra, *are put in the Accusative plural; as,*

I am not concerned.

42 *EXCEPT.* 2. *These five,* Miseret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet, *and* piget, *govern the Accusative of a Person, with the Genitive of a Thing; as,*

I pity you.
I repent of my Sin.
I am weary of my Life.

43 *EXCEPT.* 3. *These four,* Decet, delectat, juvat, oportet, *govern the Accusative of the Person with the Infinitive; as,*

---

munico, victito, veo, fido, impertior, dignor, nascor, creor, officio, consto, prosequor, &c.

NOTE, That *Potior* sometimes governs the *Genitive;* as, *Potiri hostium,* To get his Enemies into his Power. *Potiri rerum.* To have the chief Rule.

Num. 39. Such as these, *Accidit, contingit, evenit, conducit, expedit, lubet, libet, licet, placet, displicet, vacat, restat, præstat, liquet, nocet, dolet, sufficit,* &c. Together with the *Dative* they have commonly an *Infinitive* after them, which is supposed to supply the Place of a *Nominative* before them.

Num. 42. NOTE, That this *Genitive* is frequently turned into the *Infinitive;* as, *Pœnitet me peccasse; Tædet me vivere;* and so they fall in with the following Rule.

a *Delectat* b *me* bb *ſtudere.*
Non a *decet* b *te* bb *rixari.*

I delight to ſtudy.
It does not become you to ſcold.

§ 3. *REGIMEN Infinitivi, Participiorum, Gerundiorum, & Supinorum.*

§ 3. The GOVERNMENT of the Infinitive, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines.

REG. X.

44 UNUM Verbum regit aliud in Infinitivo; ut,
a *Cupio* b *diſcere.*

RULE X.

ONE *Verb governs another in the Infinitive; as,*
I deſire to learn.

REG. XI.

45 PARTICIPIA, Gerundia & Supina regunt Caſum ſuorum verborum; ut,
a *Amans* b *virtutem.*
a *Carens* b *fraude.*

RULE XI.

PARTICIPLES, *Gerunds, and Supines govern the Caſe of their own Verbs; as,*
Loving virtue.
Wanting guile.

1. *GERUNDIA.*

1. GERUNDS.

46 1. GERUNDIUM in DUM Nominativi Caſûs cum verbi [*eſt*] regit Dativum; ut,
a *Vivendum eſt* b *mihi rectè.*
a *Moriendum eſt* b *omnibus.*

1. THE *Gerund in* DUM, *of the Nominative Caſe, with the Verb* [*eſt*] *governs the Dative; as,*
I muſt live well.
All muſt die.

47 2. Gerundium in DI regitur à Subſtantivis vel Adjectivis; ut,
a *Tempus* b *legendi.*
a *Cupidus* b *diſcendi.*

2. *The Gerund in* DI *is governed by Subſtantives or Adjectives; as,*
Time of reading.
Deſirous to learn.

Num. 43. NOTE, That *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the *Subjunctive Mood*, UT being underſtood; as, *Oportet facias.* [You muſt do it] for *Oportet te facere.*

Attinet, *Pertinet*, and *Spectat*, when uſed *perſonally*, (which rarely happens) have the *Accuſative* with *ad*, as was obſerved above, *p.* 93.

Num. 44. Sometimes it is governed by *Adjectives:* as, *Cupidus & cupiens diſcere.*

NOTE, That the Verb *Cœpit* or *cœperunt* is ſometimes underſtood; as, *Omnes mihi invidere;* ſupple *cœperunt*, They all began to envy me.

Num. 46. This *Dative* is frequently underſtood; as, *Eundum eſt*, (ſupple *nobis*) We muſt go.

NOTE, That this *Gerund* always imports *Neceſſity*, and the *Dative* after it is the *Perſon* on whom the *Neceſſity* lies.

Num. 47. 1. The *Subſtantives* are ſuch as theſe, *Amor, cauſa, gratia, ſtudium, tempus, occaſio, ars, otium, voluntas, cupido*, &c.

2. The *Adjectives* are general ly *Verbals*, mentioned *Num.* 14.

3. Gerundium in DO Dativi Casûs regitur ab Adjectivis utilitatem vel aptitudinem significantibus; ut,

Charta a *utilis* b *ſcribendo.*

4. Gerundium in DUM Accuſativi Casûs regitur à Præpoſitionibus *ad* vel *inter*; ut,

Promptus a *ad* b *audiendum.*
Attentus a *inter* b *docendum.*

5. Gerundium in DO Ablativi Casûs regitur à Præpoſitionibus, *a, ab, de, e, ex,* vel *in*; ut,

Pœna a *à* b *peccando abſterret.*

* Vel ſine Præpoſitione, ut Ablativus Modi vel Cauſæ; ut,

Memoria b *excolendo* a *augetur.*
a *Defeſſus ſum* b *ambulando.*

6. Gerundia Accuſativum regentia vertuntur eleganter in Participia in DUS, quæ cum ſuis Subſtantivis in Genere, Numero, & Caſu concordant; ut,

Petendum eſt pacem.
Tempus petendi pacem.

3. *The Gerund in DO of* 48
the Dative Caſe is governed by Adjectives ſignifying Uſefulneſs or Fitneſs; as,

Paper uſeful for writing.

4. *The Gerund in DUM* 49
of the Accuſative Caſe is governed by the Prepoſitions ad *or* inter; *as,*

Ready to hear.
Attentive in Time of teaching.

5. *The Gerund in DO of* 50
the Ablative Caſe is governed by the Prepoſitions, a, ab, de, e, ex, *or* in; *as,*

Puniſhment frightens from ſinning.

* *Or without a Prepoſition,* 51
as the Ablative of Manner or Cauſe; as,

The Memory is improved by exerciſing it.
I am wearied with walking.

6. *Gerunds governing the* 52
Accuſative are elegantly turned into the Participles in DUS, which agree with their Subſtantives in Gender, Number, and Caſe; as,

Petenda eſt pax.
Tempus petendæ pacis.

Num. 48. The *Adjective* of *Fitneſs* is often underſtood; as, *Non eſt ſolvendo,* He is not able to pay, [ſupple *aptus* or *par.*]

NOTE, That ſometimes this *Gerund* is governed by a Verb; as, *Epidicum quærendo operam dabo,* I'll endeavour to find out Epidicus, *Plaut.*

Num. 49. NOTE, 1. That it hath ſometimes, but very rarely, the Prepoſition *ob* and *ante*; as, *Ob abſolvendum munus,* For finiſhing your Taſk, *Cic. Ante domandum,* Before they are tamed or broken, *Virg.* ſpeaking of Horſes.

NOTE, 2. That what was the *Gerund* in *Dum* of the Nominative with the Verb *eſt, fuit,* &c. becomes the *Accuſative* with *eſſe*; as, *Omnibus moriendum eſt novimus,* We know that all muſt die.

Ad petendum pacem.
A petendo pacem.

SUPINA.

53 * 1. Supinum in UM ponitur poſt verbum motûs; ut, a *Abiit* b *deambulatum.*

54 * 2. Supinum in U ponitur poſt nomen adjectivum; ut, a *Facile* b *dictu.*

Ad petendam pacem.
A petenda pace.

SUPINES.

1. *The Supine in UM is put after a Verb of Motion; as,*
He hath gone to walk.

2. *The Supine in U is put after an Adjective Noun; as,*
Eaſy to tell, or to be told.

Num. 52. Add to theſe the *Gerunds* of *Fungor*, *fruor* and *potior*.
Theſe *Participles* in DUS are commonly called GERUNDIVES.

NOTE, 1. That the *Subſtantive* muſt always be of the ſame Caſe that the *Gerund* was of.

NOTE, 2. That becauſe of its noiſy Sound, the *Gerund* in *di* is ſeldom changed into the *Genitive Plural;* but either the *Accuſative* is retained; as, *Studio patres veſtros videndi*, rather than *Patrum veſtrorum videndorum;* or it is turned into the Genitive Plural, without changing the Gerund; as, *Patrum veſtrorum videndi ſtudio.* Thus *Valla* and *Farnabus;* but ſee my *Gram. maj. vol.* 2. *p.* 276.

Num. 53. The Supine in UM is elegantly uſed with the Verb *Eo*, when we ſignify that one ſets himſelf about the doing of a Thing; as, *In mea vita tu laudem is quæſitum?* Are you going to advance your Reputation at the Hazard of my Life? *Ter.* And this is the Reaſon why this Supine with *iri* taken impersonally, ſupplies the Place of the *Future* of the *Infin. Paſſ.*

Some general Remarks *on the* Conſtruction *of* Participles, Gerunds, *and* Supines.

NOTE, 1. That *Participles*, *Gerunds*, and *Supines* have a twofold *Conſtruction;* one as they partake of the Nature of *Verbs*, by which they govern a certain Caſe after them; another, as they partake of the Nature of *Nouns*, and conſequently are ſubject to the ſame Rules with them; Thus,

1. A *Participle* is always an *Adjective* agreeing with its *Subſt.* by Num. 1.

2. A *Gerund* is a *Subſtantive*, and conſtrued as follows; (1.) That in *dum* of the *Nominative* by *Num.* 2. of the *Accuſ.* by *Num.* 68. (2.) That in *di* by *Num.* 11. or 14. (3.) That in *do* of the *Dat.* by *Num.* 16. of the *Ablat.* by *Num.* 69, 71, or 55.

3. A *Supine* is alſo a *Subſtantive*, (1.) That in *um*, governed by *ad* underſtood, by *Num.* 68. (2.) That in *u* governed by *in* underſtood, by *Num.* 71.

NOTE, 2. That the Preſent of the *Infinitive Active*, the *firſt Supine*, and the *Gerund* in *dum*, with the Prepoſition *ad*, are thus diſtinguiſhed: The *Supine* is uſed after *Verbs* of *Motion;* The *Infinitive* after any other *Verbs;* The *Gerund* in *dum* with *ad* after *Adjective* Nouns. But theſe laſt are frequently to be met with after *Verbs* of *Motion;* and Poets uſe alſo the *Infinitive* after *Adjectives.*

NOTE, 3. That the *Preſent* of the *Infinitive Paſſive* and the *laſt Supine*, are thus diſtinguiſhed: The *Supine* hath always an *Adjective* before it; which the *Infinitive* hath not, unleſs (as I ſaid) among Poets.

§ 4. *Conſtructio* CIRCUMSTANTIARUM.

1. *Cauſa, Modus, & Inſtrumentum.*

REG. XII.

*CAUSA, Modus, & Inſtrumentum ponuntur in Ablativo; ut,

a *Palleo* b *metu.*
a *Fecit ſuo* b *more.*
a *Scribo* b *calamo.*

2. *Locus.*

REG. XIII.

*1. NOMEN oppidi ponitur in Ge-

§ 4. The Conſtruction of CIRCUMSTANCES (*a*).

1. The Cauſe, Manner, and Inſtrument.

RULE XII.

THE *Cauſe, Manner,* 55
and Inſtrument are put in the Ablative; as,

I am pale for Fear.
He did it after his own Way.
I write with a Pen.

2. PLACE.

RULE XIII.

THE *Name of a Town* 56
is put in the Genitive,

(*a*) *Adjective* Nouns, but eſpecially *Verbs*, have frequently ſome CIRCUMSTANCES going along with them in Diſcourſe; the moſt conſiderable whereof, with reſpect to Conſtruction, are theſe five; 1. The *Cauſe* or *Reaſon* why any Thing is done. 2. The *Way* or *Manner* how it is done. 3. The *Inſtrument* or *Thing* wherewith it is done. 4. The *Place* where. And, 5. the *Time* when it is done.

Num. 55. NOTE, 1. That the Cauſe is known by the Queſtion CUR? or QUARE? *Why? Wherefore?* &c. The MANNER by the Queſtion QUOMODO? *How?* and the INSTRUMENT by the Queſtion QUOCUM? *Wherewith?*

NOTE, 2. That the *Prepoſition* is frequently expreſt with the *Cauſe* and *Manner;* as, *Præ gaudio*, For Joy. *Propter amorem*, For Love. *Ob culpam*, For a Fault. *Cum ſummo labore*, With great Labour. *Per dedecus*, With Diſgrace. But the *Prepoſition* [CUM] is never added to the *Inſtrument:* For we cannot ſay, *Scribo cum calamo; Cum occulis vidi.*

NOTE, 3. But here we muſt carefully diſtinguiſh between the *Inſtrument*, and what is called the *Ablativus Commitatus*, or *Ablative* of *Concomitancy*, *i. e.* ſignifying that ſomething was in *Company* with another; for then the *Prepoſition* [CUM] is generally expreſt; as, *Ingreſſus eſt cum gladio*, He entered with a Sword, *i. e.* Having a Sword with him or about him.

NOTE, 4. That to *Cauſe* ſome refer, the *Matter* of which any Thing is made; as, *Clypæus ære fabricatus*, A Shield made of Braſs: But (except with the Poets) the *Prepoſition* is for the moſt part expreſt.

NOTE, 5. That to *Manner* ſome refer the *Adjunct*, *i. e.* ſomething joined to another Thing; as, *Terra amœna floribus*, a Land pleaſant with Flowers. *Mons nive candidus*, A Hill white with Snow.

NOTE, 6. That to *Inſtrument* ſome refer *Conficior dolore, inedià*, &c. *Proſequor odio, amore*, &c. *Afficio te honore, contumelia*, &c. *Laceſſo verbis aſperis*, &c.

nitivo, cùm quæſtio ſit per UBI; ut,

a *Vixit* b *Romæ.*

a *Mortuus eſt* b *Londini.*

when the Queſtion is made by UBI, [Where] *as,*

He lived at Rome.

He died at London.

57 * EXCEP. Si verò ſit tertiæ Declinationis, aut Pluralis Numeri, in Ablativo effertur; ut,

EXCEP. But if it is of the third Declenſion, or of the Plural Number, it is expreſt in the Ablative; as,

a *Habitat* b *Carthagine.*

a *Studuit* b *Pariſiis.*

He dwells at Carthage.

He ſtudied at Paris.

58 * 2. Cùm quæſtio ſit per QUO, nomen oppidi in Accuſativo regitur; ut,

2. *When the Queſtion is made by QUO,* [Whither] *the Name of a Town is governed in the Accuſative; as,*

a *Venit* b *Edimburgum.*

a *Profectus eſt* b *Athenas.*

He came to Edinburgh.

He went to Athens.

59 * 3. Si quæratur per UNDE vel QUA, nomen oppidi ponitur in Ablativo; ut,

3. *If the Queſtion is made by UNDE,* [Whence] *or QUA,* [By *or* through what Place] *the Name of a Town is put in the Ablative; as,*

a *Diſceſſit* b *Aberdonia.*

b *Laodicea iter* a *faciebat.*

He went from Aberdeen.

He went through Laodicea.

60 * 4. *Domus* & *Rus* eodem modo quo oppidorum nomina conſtruuntur; ut,

4. Domus *and* Rus *are conſtrued the ſame Way as Names of Towns; as,*

Manet Domi, He ſtays at home. *Domum revertitur,* He returns home. *Domo accerſitus ſum,* I am called from home. *Vivit rure* or *ruri. Abiit rus. Rediit rure.*

61. 5. Nominibus regionum provinciarum, & aliorum locorum, non dictis, præpoſitio ferè additur; ut,

5. *To Names of Countries, Provinces, and other Places, not mentioned, the Prepoſition is generally added; as,*

UBI? *Natus in Scotia, in Fiſa in urbe,* &c.

QUO? *Abiit in Scotiam, in Fiſam, in* [vel *ad*] *urbem,* &c.

UNDE? *Rediit è Scotia, è Fiſa, ex urbe,* &c.

QUA? *Tranſit per Scotiam, per Fiſam, per urbem,* &c.

Num. 56, *&c.* NOTE, 1. That the *Prepoſition* is frequently added to *Names* of *Towns,* (eſpecially when the Queſtion is *Quo? Unde?* or *Qua?* and ſometimes omitted to *Names* of *Countries, Provinces,* &c.

ANNOTATIO.

* Diſtantia unius loci ab alio ponitur in Accuſativo, interdum & in Ablativo; ut,

Glaſcua a *diſtat Edimburgo triginta* b *millia paſſuum.*
b *Iter* vel b *itinere unius diei.*

The Diſtance of one Place 62 *from another is put in the Accuſative, and ſometimes in the Ablative; as,*

Glaſgow is thirty Miles diſtant from Edinburgh.
One Day's Journey.

3. *Tempus.*
REG. XIV.

* 1. TEMPUS ponitur in Ablativo, cùm quæſtio fit per QUANDO; ut,

a *Venit* b *horâ tertiâ.*

3. TIME.
RULE XIV.

1. *TIME is put in the Ab-* 63 *lative, when the Queſtion is made by QUANDO,* [When] *as,*

He came at three o'clock.

* 2. Cùm quæſtio fit per QUAMDIU tempus ponitur in Accuſativo vel Ablativo; ſed ſæpius Accuſativo; ut,

a *Manſit paucos* b *dies.*
Sex b *menſibus* a *abſuit.*

2. *When the Queſtion is* 64 *made by QUAMDIU,* [How long] *Time is put in the Accuſative or Ablative, but oftner in the Accuſative; as,*

He ſtaid a few Days.
He was away ſix Months.

NOTE, 2. That *Humi*, *Militiæ*, and *Belli* are alſo uſed in the Genitive, when the Queſtion is made by *Ubi?* as, *Procumbit humi*, He lies down on the Ground. *Domi militiæque una fuimus*, We were together both at home and abroad, *or* in Peace and War, *Ter. Belli domique agitabatur*, Was managed both in Peace and War. *Sall.*

NOTE, 3. That when the Name of a *Town* is put in the *Genitive*, *in urbe* is underſtood, and therefore we cannot ſay, *Natus eſt Romæ urbis nobilis*, but *urbe nobili.*

¶ Theſe Rules concerning Names of Towns may be thus expreſt;

The Name of a Town after { IN *or* AT / TO *or* UNTO / FROM *or* THROUGH } is put in the { *Gen.* or *Abl.* † / *Accuſative.* / *Ablative.* }

† *i. e.* When it is of the third Declenſion, or of the Plural Number. But when AT ſignifies *about* or *near* a Place, we make uſe of the Preposition *ad*; as, *Bellum quod ad Trojam geſſerat*, Virg.

Num. 63 and 64. Theſe two Rules may be thus expreſt;

1. Nouns that denote a *preciſe* TERM of TIME are put in the *Ablative.*
2. Nouns that denote CONTINUANCE of *Time* are put in the *Accuſative* or *Ablative.*

De Ablativo abſoluto.

REG. XV.

65* SUBSTANTIVUM cum Participio, quorum Caſus à nulla alia dictione pendet, ponuntur in Ablativo abſoluto; ut,

a *Sole* b *oriente fugiunt tenebræ.*

a *Opere* b *peracto ludemus.*

Of the Ablative abſolute.

RULE XV.

A *SUBSTANTIVE with a Participle, whoſe Caſe depends upon no other Word, are put in the Ablative abſolute; as,*

The Sun riſing [or, while the Sun riſeth Darkneſs flies away.

Our Work being finiſhed [or, when our Work is finiſhed] we will play.

III. Conſtructio Vocum Indeclinabilium.

I. *Adverbiorum.*

66* 1 ADVERBIA quædam temporis,

III. *The Conſtruction of Words Indeclinable.*

I. Of ADVERBS.

1. SOME *Adverbs of Time, Place, and*

Num. 65. NOTE, 1. This *Ablative* is called ABSOLUTE or *Independent*, becauſe it is not directed or determined by any other Word; for if the *Subſtantive* (which is principally to be regarded) hath a *Word* before, that ſhould govern it, or a *Verb* coming after, to which it ſhould be a *Nominative*, then the Rule does not take Place.

NOTE, 2. That *Having*, *Being*, or a Word ending in *ing*, are the ordinary *Signs* of this *Ablative*.

NOTE, 3. That (to prevent our miſtaking the true *Subſtantive*) when a *Participle-perfect* is Engliſhed by HAVING, we are carefully to advert, whether it is *Paſſive* or *Deponent*. If it is *Paſſive*, we are to Change it into BEING, its true *Engliſh*. If it is *Deponent*, there needs no Change, for HAVING is the proper *Engliſh* of it. The Uſe of this Note will appear by the following Example.

James having ſaid theſe Things, departed. } *Jacobus hæc locutus abiit.* Dep.

James, theſe Things being ſaid, departed. } *Jacobus his dictis abiit.* Paſſ.

Having promiſed a great Reward. } *Pollicitus magna mercedem.* Dep.

A great Reward being promiſed. } *Magna mercede promiſſa.* Paſſ.

NOTE, 4. That when there is no *Participle* expreſt in Latin, *exiſtente* [being] is underſtood; as, *Me puero*, I being a Boy. *Saturno rege*, Saturn being King. *Civitate nondum libera*, The State not being yet free.

NOTE, 5. That the Participle may be reſolved into *Dum*, *cum*, *quando*, *ſi*, *poſtquam*, &c. [While, ſeeing, when, if, after,] with the *Verb*, either in *Engliſh* or *Latin*.

loci, & quantitatis regunt Genitivum; ut,

a *Pridie illius* b *diei.*
a *Ubique* b *gentium.*
a *Satis eſt* b *verborum.*

* 3. Quædam Adverbia derivata regunt Caſum primitivorum; ut,

b *Omnium* a *elegantiſſimè loquitur.*
Vivere a *convenienter* b *naturæ.*

2. *Præpoſitionum.*

1. PRÆPOSITIONES *Ad, apud, ante,* &c. Accuſativum regunt; ut,

a *Ad* b *patrem.*

2. Præpoſitiones *A, ab, abs,* &c. regunt Ablativum; ut,

a *A* b *patre.*

3. Præpoſitiones *In, ſub, ſuper,* & *ſubter,* regunt Accuſativum cùm motus ad locum ſignificatur; ut,

Eo a *in* b *ſcholam.*
a *Sub* b *mœnia tendit,* Virg.
Incidit a *ſuper* b *agmina,* Id.
Ducit a *ſubter* b *faſtigia tecti,* Id.

¶ At ſi motus vel quies in loco ſignificetur, *In* & *ſub* regunt Ablativum; *Super* & *ſubter* vel Accuſativum vel Ablativum; ut,

Sedeo vel *diſcurro* a *in* b *ſchola.*
Recubo vel *ambulo* a *ſub* b *umbra.*
Sedens a *ſuper* b *arma,* Virg.
b *Fronde* a *ſuper viridi,* Id.

Quantity, govern the Genitive; as,

The Day before that Day.
Every where.
There's enough of words.

2. *Some Derivative Adverbs govern the Caſe of their Primitives; as,* 67

He ſpeaks the moſt elegantly of all.
To live agreeable to Nature.

2. Of PREPOSITIONS.

1. THE *Prepoſitions,* Ad, apud, ante, *&c. govern the Accuſative; as,* 68

To the Father.

2. *The Prepoſitions* A, ab, abs, *&c. govern the Ablative; as,* 69

From the Father.

3. *The Prepoſitions* In, ſub, ſuper *and* ſubter, *govern the Accuſative when Motion to a Place is ſignified; as,* 70

I go into the School.
He goes under the Walls.
It fell upon the Troops.
He brings [*him*] under the Roof of the Houſe.

¶ *But if Motion or Reſt in a Place be ſignified,* In *and* ſub *govern the Ablative;* Super *and* ſubter *either the Accuſative or Ablative; as,* 71

I ſit *or* run up and down in the School.
I ly *or* walk under the Shadow.
Sitting above the Arms.
Upon the green Graſs.

Venæ a *ſubter* b *cutem diſperſæ*, Plin.
a *Subter* b *littore*, Catull.

The Veins diſperſed under the Skin.
Beneath the Shore.

72 4. ¶ Præpoſitio in compoſitione eundem ſæpe caſum regit quem extra; ut,

a *Adeamus* b *ſcholam*.
a *Exeamus* b *ſchola*.

4. ¶ *A Prepoſition oft-times governs the ſame Caſe in Compoſition that it does without it; as,*

Let us go to the School.
Let us go out of the School.

¶ The Prepoſitions, with the Caſes they govern, are contained in theſe Verſes.

1. Hæ quartum adſciſcunt caſum ſibi præpoſituræ;
Ad, penes, adverſum, cis, citra, adverſus, & extra,
Ultra, poſt, præter, juxta, per, pone, ſecundum,
Erga, apud, ante, ſecus, trans, ſupra, propter, & intra,
Queis addas *contra, circum, circa, inter, ob, infra.*
2. Hæ ſextum poſcunt; *A, cum, tenus, abs, ab, & abſque,*
Atque *palam, pro, præ, clam, de, e, ex, ſine, coram.*
3. *Sub, ſuper, inſubter*, quartum ſextumque requirunt.

NOTE, 1. That *Verſus* and *Uſque* are put after their Caſes; as, *Italiam verſus*, Towards Italy; *Oceanum uſque*, As far as the Ocean. But (as we have already obſerved, *p.* 75.) theſe are properly *Adverbs*, the *Prepoſition* AD being underſtood.

NOTE, 2. That *Tenus* is alſo put after its Caſe; as, *Mento tenus*, Up to the Chin.

NOTE, 3. That *Tenus* governs the *Genitive Plural*, 1. When the Word wants the *Singular;* as, *Cumarum Tenus*, As far as [the Town] *Cumæ*. 2. When we ſpeak of things of which we have naturally but two; as, *Crurum Tenus*, Up to the Legs.

NOTE, 4. That *A and E* are put before *Conſonants; Ab* and *Ex* before *Vowels* and *Conſonants; Abs* before *t* and *q*.

NOTE, 5. That *ſubter* hath very rarely the *Ablat.* and only among Poets.

NOTE, 6. That in Engliſh IN is commonly the Sign of the *Ablative*, INTO of the *Accuſative*.

NOTE, 7. IN for *erga, contra, per, ſupra, ad*, &c. governs the *Accuſ.* as, *Amor in patriam. Quid ego in te commiſi? Creſcit in dies ſingulos. Imperium regum in proprios greges*, Horat. *Piſces in cœnam emti*. But IN for *inter* governs the *Ablative;* as, *In amicis habere*, Salluſt.

SUB for *circa* governs the *Accuſ.* as, *Sub cœnam*.

SUPER for *ultra, præter*, and *inter*, governs the *Accuſat.* as, *Super Garamantas*, Virg. *Super gratiam ſuam*, Salluſt. *In ſermone ſuper cœnam nato*, Suet. For *de* it governs the *Ablat.* as, *Super hac re nimis*, Cic.

Num. 72. NOTE, That this Rule only takes Place when the Prepoſition may be diſſolved from the Verb, and put before the Caſe by itſelf; as, *Alloquor patrem*, i. e. *Loquor ad patrem*. And even then the Prepoſition is frequently repeated; as, *Exire e finibus ſuis*, Cæſ.

3. *Interjectionum.*

*1. INTERJECTIONES *O, heu, & proh,* regunt Vocativum, interdum Accuſativum; ut,

a *O formoſe* b *puer.*

a *Heu* b *me miſerum!*

* 2. *Hei* & *Væ* regunt Dativum; ut,

a *Hei* b *mihi!*

a *Væ* b *vobis.*

4. *Conjunctionum.*

*1. CONJUNCTIONES *Et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel,* & quædam aliæ, connectunt ſimiles Caſus & Modos; ut,

Honora b *patrem* a *&* b *matrem.*

Nec b *ſcribit* a *nec* b *legit.*

2. *Ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam,* & *dummodo* Subjunctivo Modo ferè ſemper adhærent; ut,

Lego a *ut* b *diſcam.*

a *Utinam* b *ſaperes.*

3. Of INTERJECTIONS.

1. THE *Interjections O,* Heu, *and* Proh, *govern the Vocative, and ſometimes the Accuſative; as,* 73

O fair Boy.

Ah Wretch that I am!

2. Hei *and* Væ *govern the Dative; as,* 74

Ah me!

Wo to you.

4. Of CONJUNCTIONS.

1. THE *Conjunctions* Et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, *and ſome others, couple like Caſes and Moods; as,* 75

Honour your Father and Mother.

He neither writes nor reads.

2. Ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam *and* dummodo *are for the moſt part joined with the Subſtantive Mood; as,* 76

I read that I may learn.

I wiſh you were wiſe.

Num. 75. To theſe add *Quam, niſi, præterquam, an,* and *Adverbs* of *Likeneſs.* The Reaſon of this *Conſtruction* is becauſe the Words ſo coupled depend all upon the ſame Word, which is expreſt to one of them and underſtood to the other.

Num. 76. To theſe add all *indefinite* Words, that is, *Interogatives,* whether *Nouns, Pronouns, Adverbs* or *Conjunctions,* when taken in a *doubtful* or *indefinite* Senſe, ſuch as, *Quis, uter, quantus,* &c. *Ubi, quo, unde,* &c. *Cur, quare, quamobrem, num, an, anne,* &c. (See *Page* 73 and 78.) They generally become *Indefinites,* when another Word comes before them in the Sentence, ſuch as *Scio, neſcio, video, intelligo, dubito,* and the like; as, *Ubi eſt frater tuus? Neſcio ubi ſit. An venturus eſt? Dubito an venturus ſit.*

NE the *Adverb* of *Forbidding,* requires the *Imperative* or *Subjunctive;* as, *Ne time,* or *ne timeas.* See *Page* 55.

Dum, quam, quod, ſi, ſin, niſi, etſi, etiamſi, priuſquam, ſimulac, ſiquidem, quandoquidem, &c. are joined ſometimes with the *Indicative,* and ſometimes with the *Subjunctive.*

SYNTAXEOS *Synopſis.*

Sive,

Genuinæ & maximè neceſſariæ Conſtructionis Regulæ, ad quas cæteræ omnes reducuntur.

AXIOMATA.

I. OMNIS Oratio conſtat ex Nomine & Verbo.

II. Omnis Nominativus habet ſuum Verbum expreſſum vel ſuppreſſum.

III. Omne Verbum finitum habet ſuum Nominativum expreſſum vel ſuppreſſum.

IV. Omne Adjectivum habet ſuum Subſtantivum expreſſum vel ſuppreſſum.

Sex Caſuum Conſtructio.

I. OMNE Verbum finitum, expreſſum vel ſuppreſſum, concordat cum Nominativo, expreſſo vel ſuppreſſo, in Numero & Perſona; ut,

Puer legit.
[Homines] *Aiunt.*
Romani [cœperunt] *feſtinare.*

A Summary of *SYNTAX.*

Or,

The true and moſt neceſſary Rules of Conſtruction, to which all the reſt are reduced.

Firſt PRINCIPLES.

I. *EVERY Speech or* [Sentence] *conſiſts of a Noun and a Verb.*

II. *Every Nominative hath its own Verb expreſt or underſtood.*

III. *Every finite Verb hath its own Nominative expreſt or underſtood.*

IV. *Every Adjective hath its own Subſtantive expreſt or underſtood.*

The Conſtruction of the ſix Caſes.

I. *EVERY Verb of the Finite Mood, expreſt or underſtood, agrees with its Nominative, expreſt or underſtood, in Number and Perſon; as,*

The Boy reads.
The ſay.
The Romans made haſte.

II. Omnis Genitivus regitur Subſtantivo expreſſo vel ſuppreſſo; ut,

Liber fratris.
Eſt [officium] *patris.*

III. Dativus Acquiſitionis, [*i. e. cui aliquid acquiritur vel adimitur*] cuivis Nomini aut Verbo expreſſo vel ſuppreſſo jungitur; ut,

Dedi petro.
Cui dediſti?
[Dedi] *Petro.*
Utilis Bello.
Non eſt [aptus] *ſolvendo.*

IV. Omnis Accuſativus regitur à Verbo activo, vel † Præpoſitione, expreſſis vel ſuppreſſis; ut,

Amo Deum;
& [amo] *parentes.*
Ad patrem.
Abiit [ad] *Londinum.*

¶ Aut Infinitivo præponitur expreſſus vel ſuppreſſus; ut,

Dicit ſe ſcribere.
Licet mihi [me] *eſſe bonum.*

V. Omnis Vocativus abſolutè ponitur, addita nonnunquam Interjectione *O*; ut,

O Dave.
Heus Syre.

VI. Omnis Ablativus regitur à † Præpoſitione expreſſa vel ſuppreſſa; ut,

A puero.
Exultat [præ] *gaudio.*

II. *Every Genitive is governed by a Subſtantive expreſt or underſtood; as,*

The Book of my Brother.
It is the Duty of a Father.

III. *The Dative of Acquiſition* [*i. e.* to which any thing is acquired, or from which it is taken] *is joined to any Noun or Verb expreſt or underſtood; as,*

I gave it to Peter.
To whom did you give it?
To Peter.
Profitable for war.
He is not able to pay.

IV. *Every Accuſative is governed by an active Verb, or a † Prepoſition, expreſt or underſtood; as,*

I love God;
and my Parents.
To the Father.
He hath gone to London.

¶ *Or is put before the Infinitive expreſt or underſtood; as,*

He ſays that he is writing.
I may be good.

V. *Every Vocative is placed abſolutely, the Interjection* O *being ſometimes added; as,*

O Davus.
Come hither Syrus.

VI. *Every Ablative is governed by a † Prepoſition expreſt or underſtood; as,*

From a Child.
He leaps for Joy.

See *Page* 75, and *Larger Syntax*, *Page* 105 and 106.

APPENDIX.

I. OMNE Adjectivum concordat cum Subſtantivo expreſſo vel ſuppreſſo, in Genere, Numero, et Caſu; ut,

Bonus vir.

Triſte [negotium.]

II. Subſtantiva ſignificantia eandem rem conveniunt in Caſu; ut,

Dominus Deus.

III. Omnis Infinitivus regitur à Verbo vel Nomine expreſſis vel ſuppreſſis; ut,

Cupio diſcere.

Dignus amari.

Populus [cœpit] *mirari.*

I. *EVERY Adjective agrees with a Subjunctive expreſt or underſtood, in Gender, Number, and Caſe; as,*

A good Man.

A ſad Thing.

II. *Subſtantives ſignifying the ſame Thing agree in Caſe; as,*

The Lord God.

III. *Every Infinitive is governed by a Verb or Noun expreſt or underſtood; as,*

I deſire to learn.

Worthy to be loved.

The People wondered.

EXPLANATION.

ALL *Conſtruction* is either TRUE or APPARENT; or, (as Grammarians expreſs it) JUST or FIGURATIVE. TRUE *Conſtruction* is founded upon the eſſential Properties of Words, and is almoſt the ſame in all Languages. APPARENT *Conſtruction* entirely depends upon *Cuſtom*, which, either for Elegance or Diſpatch, leaves out a great many Words, otherwiſe neceſſary to make a Sentence perfectly full and Grammatical. The firſt is compriſed in theſe few *Fundamental Rules*, and more fully branched out in the *Larger Syntax*. The other is alſo interſperſed through the *Larger Syntax*, but diſtinguiſhed from that which is *True* by an *Aſteriſk*.

The *Caſes* mentioned in the *Rules* of the *Larger Syntax*, immediately diſcover the *Rules* of this *Summary* to which they reſpectively belong; theſe that are *True* without any *Ellipſis*; theſe that are *Figurative* by having their *Ellipſis* ſupplied as follows, as they are numbered in the Margin.

To RULE II. are reduced Num. 13. ſupple *negotium*. Num. 14. and 47. ſup. *de cauſa*, *gratia*, or *in re*, *negotio*. Num. 15. ſup. *e numero*. Num. 21. ſup. *de negotio*. Num. 22, and 23. ſup. *officium*, *negotium*, &c. Num. 24. ſup. 1. *ſat.* taken from the Verb 2. *de cauſa*, &c. Num. 29. ſup. *memoriam*, *notitiam*, *verba*, &c. Num. 30. ſup. *de crimine*, *pœna*, &c. Num. 35, and 36. ſup. *pro re*, or *pretio æris*. Num. 40. ſup. *inter negotia*, and *res* [*fert*] *ſe ad negotia*. Num. 42. ſup. *res*, *negotium*, &c. Num. 56. ſup. *in urbe*. Num. 60. *Domi*, ſup. *in ædibus*, Num. 66. theſe *Adverbs* ſeem to be taken for *Subſtantive Nouns*.

To RULE III. is reduced Num. 73. ſup. *malum eſt*; or theſe *Interjections* are uſed as *Subſtantives*.

To RULE IV. belong Num. 18. 53. and 62. ſup. *ad* Num. 33. ſup. *quad ad.* Num. 41. *i. e. Eſt inter mea negotia; Refert* [or *res fert*] *ad mea negotia*, &c. Num. 58. ſup. *ad* or *in*. Num. 64. ſup. *per*. Num. 73. ſup. *ſentio, lugeo*, &c.

To RULE VI. belong Num. 12. ſup. *e, ex*, or *cum*. Num. 19. ſup. *præ*. Num. 20. ſup. *de, e, ex, cum*, &c. Num. 21. ſup. *a, ab*, &c. Num. 34. ſup. *pro*. Num. 37. 38. ſup. *a, ab, de, e, ex*, Num. 51. and 55. ſup. *præ, cum, a, ab, e, ex*, &c. Num. 54. ſup. *in* or *de*. Num. 57. ſup. *in*. Num. 59. ſup. *a, ab, e, ex*. Num. 62. ſup. *in*. Num. 64. ſup. *in* or *pro*. Num. 65. ſup. *ſub, cum, a, ab*.

NOTE, 1. That under *Verbs* muſt alſo be comprehended *Participles, Gerunds* and *Supines*, becauſe the general Signification of *Verb* is included in them.

NOTE, 2. That as a conſequence of this, a learned Grammarian ingeniouſly ſuppoſes that the *Dative* and *Infinitive* are always governed by a *Verb*, and that when they ſeem to be governed by a *Noun*, the Participle *exiſtens* is underſtood; as, *Utilis* [*exiſtens*] *bello. Pollio præſidium* [*exiſtens*] *reis. Dignus* [*exiſtens*] *amari.*

NOTE, 3. That the *Vocative* is properly no part of a Sentence, but the Caſe by which we excite one to hear or execute what we ſay. Therefore when the *Vocative* is put before the *Imperative*, as frequently happens, the *Nominative* TU or VOS is underſtood; and that even though theſe Words be already expreſt in the *Vocative;* as, *Tu Jacobe lege*, i. e. *O tu Jacobe, tu lege.*

NOTE, 4. That the *Vocative* is ſufficient to itſelf, and does not neceſſarily require the *Interjection* O. See *Voſſius, lib.* VII. *cap.* 69. and *Sanctius, lib.* IV. *de Ellipſi Verb.* Audio *&* Narro.

CHAP. II.

Of EXPOSITION or RESOLUTION.

EXPOSITION or RESOLUTION is the unfolding of a *Sentence*, and placing all the Parts of it, whether expreſt or underſtood, in their proper Order, that the true Senſe and Meaning of it may appear.

I. A SENTENCE is either *Simple* or *Compound.*

1. A SIMPLE *Sentence* is that which hath one *Finite Verb* in it.

2. A COMPOUND *Sentence* is that which hath two or more ſuch Verbs in it joined together by ſome *Couples.*

Theſe COUPLES are of four Sorts. 1. The *Relative* QUI. 2. Some *Comparative* Words, ſuch as, *tantus, quantus; talis, qualis; tam, quam*, &c. 3. *Indefinite* Words, [See *Page* 78, and 107.] 4. *Conjunctions.*

In a *Simple Sentence* there are two Things to be conſidered, 1. Its *Eſſential.* 2. Its *Accidental* Parts.

1. The *Eſſential* Parts of a *Sentence* are a *Nominative* and a *Verb.*

2. The *Accidental* Parts are of four Kinds, 1. Such as excite *Attention*, as the *Vocative* and *exciting Participles*; as, *O, en, ecce, heus*, &c. 2. Such as ſerve to *introduce* a Sentence, or to ſhew its *Dependence* upon what was ſaid before; as, *Jam, hactenus, quandoquidem, cum, dum, interea*, &c. 3. Such as *limit* the general and indefinite Signification either of the *Nominative* or *Verb*, and theſe are *Subſtantive Nouns.* 4. Such as *qualify* and *explain* them, *viz.*

Adjectives, *Adverbs*, and *Prepoſitions*, with their Caſes. Sometimes a Part of a *compound* Sentence ſupplies the Place of thoſe two laſt kinds of Words.

II. The ORDER of Words in a Sentence is either *Natural* or *Artificial*.

1. NATURAL *Order* is when the Words of a Sentence naturally follow one after another, in the ſame Order with the Conceptions of our Minds.

2. ARTIFICIAL *Order* is when Words are ſo ranged as to render them moſt agreeable to the Ear; but ſo as the Senſe be not thereby obſcured.

III. A *Sentence* may be reſolved from the *Artificial* into the *Natural Order* by the following Rules:

1. Take the *Vocative*, *Exciting* and *Introductory* Words, where they are found.

2. The NOMINATIVE.

3. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it, *i. e.* Words agreeing with, or governed by it, or by another ſucceſſively (till you come to the *Verb*,) where they are found.

4. The VERB.

5. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it, *&c.* where they are found, to the End of the Sentence.

6. Supply every where the Words that are underſtood.

7. If the Sentence is compound, take the Parts of it ſeverally, as they depend upon one another, proceeding with each of them as before.

EXAMPLE.

Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibique perſuade eſſe te quidem mihi cariſſimum; ſed multo fore cariorem, ſi talibus monumentis præceptiſque lætabere, Cic. Off. lib. 3.

Farewel then, my [Son] Cicero, and aſſure yourſelf that you are indeed very dear unto me; but ſhall be much dearer, if you ſhall take Delight in ſuch Writings and Inſtructions.

This *Compound Sentence* is reſolved into theſe five *Simple Sentences*.

1. *Igitur mi* [fili] *Cicero*, [tu] *vale;* 2. *&* [tu] *perſuade tibi te eſſe quidem cariſſimum* [filium] *mihi;* 3. *ſed* [tu perſuade tibi te] *fore cariorem* [filium mihi in] *multo* [negotio]; 4. *ſi* [tu] *lætabere talibus monumentis;* 5. *&* ſi tu lætabere talibus] *præceptis.*

NOTE, 1. That *Interrogative* Words ſtand always firſt in a *Sentence*, unleſs a *Prepoſition* comes before them.

NOTE, 2. That *Negative* Words ſtand immediately before the *Verb*.

NOTE, 3. That *Relatives* are placed before the Word by which they are governed, unleſs it is a *Prepoſition*.

NOTE, 4. That the *Subjunctive* Mood is uſed in *Compound Sentences*.

NOTE, 5. That the *Parts* of a *Compound Sentence* are ſeparated from one another by theſe *Marks* called INTERPUNCTIONS. 1. Theſe that are *ſmaller*, named *Clauſes*, by this Mark (,) called a *Comma*. 2. Theſe that are *greater*, named *Members*, by this Mark, (:) called *Colon*, or this, (;) called a *Semicolon*. 3. When a Sentence is thrown in that hath little or no connexion with the reſt, it is incloſed within what we call a *Parentheſis*, marked thus ( ).

But when the *Sentence*, whether *Simple* or *Compound*, is fully ended, if it is a plain *Affirmation* or *Negation*, it is cloſed with this Mark (.) called a *Point*. If a Queſtion is aſked, with this Mark (?) called a *Point of Interrogation*. If *Wonder* or ſome other ſudden *Paſſion* is ſignified, with this Mark (!) called a *Point of Admiration*.

FINIS.

PRIMA
Morum & Pietatis
PRECEPTA,
VIZ.

I. *Dicta* ſeptem ſapientum è Græcis.
II. *Gulielmi Lilii* Monita Pædagogica.
III. *Dion. Catonis* Diſticha Moralia.
IV. *Joan. Sulpitii Verulani* de Moribus & Civilitate *Puerorum* Carmen.
V. *Rudimenta Pietatis;* ſive, Oratio Dominica, Symbolum Apoſtolicum & Decalogus: *item*, duorum Sacramentorum, *Baptiſmi* & *Sacræ Cœnæ Domini*, Inſtitutiones.

QUIBUS ACCESSIT,

Summula CATECHISMI, ad piam Juniorum Educationem apprime utilis:

ITEM,

Præcipua Capita Chriſtianæ Religionis, deſumpta è ſacra Scriptura Veteris ac Novi Teſtamenti.

Timor Domini initium ſapientiæ eſt, Prov. i. 7.
Pietas ad omnia utilis eſt, promiſſiones habens & preſentis & futuræ vitæ; 1 Tim. iv. 8.

GLASGUÆ:
In Ædibus GULIELMI SMITH.
Anno Domini 1782.

Dicta SAPIENTUM è Græcis,

D. Eraſmo Roterod. Interprete.

Aurea dicta, puer, quæ ſunt hîc mente reconde;
Hinc poteris magnâ commoditate frui.

Dicta PERIANDRI CORINTHII.

OMNIBUS placeto.
Bona res quies.
Periculoſa temeritas.
Semper voluptates ſunt mortales:
Honores autem immortales.
Amicis adverſâ fortunâ utentibus idem eſto.
Lucrum turpe, res peſſima.
Quicquid promiſeris facito.
Infortunium tuum celato, ne voluptate afficias inimicos.
Veritati adhæreto.
Age quæ juſta ſunt.
Volentiam oderis.
Principibus cede.
Voluptati tempera.
A jurejurando abſtine.
Pietatem ſectare.
Laudato honeſta.
A vitiis abſtine.
Beneficium repende.
Supplicibus miſericors eſto.
Libros inſtrue.
Sapientum utere conſuetudine.
Litem oderis.
Bonos in pretio habeto.
Arcanum cela.
Cede magnis.
Opportunitatem expectato.
Mortalia cogita.
Ne prior injuriam facias.
Audi quæ ad te pertinent.
Probrum fugito.
Reſponde in tempore.
Ea facito quorum te non poſſit pœnitere.
Ne cui invideas.
Oculis moderare.
Quod juſtum eſt imitare.
Bene meritos honora.
Spem fove.
Calumniam oderis.
Affabilis eſto.
Cùm errâris, muta conſilium.
Concordiam ſectare.
Diuturnam amicitiam cuſtodi.
Magiſtratus metue.
Omnibus teipſum præbe.
Ne loquaris ad gratiam.
Ne tempori credideris.
Teipſum ne negligas.
Seniorem reverere.
Mortem oppete pro patria.
Ne quavis de re doleas.
Ex ingenuis liberos crea.
Sperato tanquam mortalis:
Parcito tanquam immortalis.
Ne efferaris gloriâ.
Largire cum utilitate.

Amicis utere.
Mortuum ne irrideto.
Dilige amicos.
Consule inculpatè.

Dicta BIANTIS PRIENENSIS.

IN speculo teipsum contemplare, & si formosus apparebis, age quæ deceant formam; sin deformis, quod in facie minus est, vel deest, id morum pensato pulchritudine.
Audito multa;
Loquere pauca.
De Numine ne malè loquaris;
Quid sit autem ausculta.
Priùs autem intellige; & deinde ad opus accede.
Ne ob divitias laudâris virum indignum.
Persuasione cape, non vi.
Compara in adolescentia quidem modestiam, in senectute verò prudentiam.

Dicta PITTACI MITYLENÆI.

QUÆ facturus es, ea ne dixeris; frustratus enim rideberis.
Depositum redde.
Desidiosus ne esto.
A familiaribus in minutis rebus læsus, feras.
Amico ne maledixeris.
Inimicum ne putes amicum.
Uxori dominare [*Christianè.*]
Quæ feceris parentibus, eadem à liberis exspecta.
Inter amicos ne fueris judex.
Ne contende cum parentibus, etiamsi justa dixeris.
Ne geras imperium, priusquam parere didiceris.
Infortunatum ne irriseris.
Audito libenter.
Ne lingua præcurrat mentem.
Ne festines loqui.
Nosce teipsum.
Legibus pare.
Voluptatem cöerce.
Ne quid nimis.
Inimicitiam solve.
Ante omnia venerare Numen.
Parentes revere.
Quæ fieri non possunt, cave concupiscas.
Uxorum ducito ex æqualibus; ne, si ex ditioribus duxeris, dominos tibi pares, non affines.

Dicta CLEOBULI LINDII.

NE sis unquam elatus.
Domûs curam age.
Libros evolve.
Justè judicato.
Bonis benefacito.
Liberos tibi charissimos erudi.
A maledicentia temperato.
Suspicionem abjicito.
Parentes patientiâ vince.
Beneficii accepti memento.
Inferiorem ne rejicias.
Aliena ne concupiscas.
Ne teipsum præcipites in discrimen.

Dicta SAPIENTUM è Græcis,

D. Eraſmo Roterod. Interprete.

Aurea dicta, puer, quæ ſunt hîc mente reconde;
Hinc poteris magnâ commoditate frui.

Dicta PERIANDRI CORINTHII.

OMNIBUS placeto.
Bona res quies.
Periculoſa temeritas.
Semper voluptates ſunt mortales:
Honores autem immortales.
Amicis adversâ fortunâ utentibus idem eſto.
Lucrum turpe, res peſſima.
Quicquid promiſeris facito.
Infortunium tuum celato, ne voluptate afficias inimicos.
Veritati adhæreto.
Age quæ juſta ſunt.
Volentiam oderis.
Principibus cede.
Voluptati tempera.
A jurejurando abſtine.
Pietatem ſectare.
Laudato honeſta.
A vitiis abſtine.
Beneficium repende.
Supplicibus miſericors eſto.
Libaros inſtrue.
Sapientum utere conſuetudine.
Litem oderis.
Bonos in pretio habeto.
Arcanum cela.
Cede magnis.
Opportunitatem expectato.
Mortalia cogita.
Ne prior injuriam facias.
Audi quæ ad te pertinent.
Probrum fugito.
Reſponde in tempore.
Ea facito quorum te non poſſit pœnitere.
Ne cui invideas.
Oculis moderare.
Quod juſtum eſt imitare.
Bene meritos honora.
Spem fove.
Calumniam oderis.
Affabilis eſto.
Cùm errâris, muta conſilium.
Concordiam ſectare.
Diuturnam amicitiam cuſtodi.
Magiſtratus metue.
Omnibus teipſum præbe.
Ne loquaris ad gratiam.
Ne tempori credideris.
Teipſum ne negligas.
Seniorem reverere.
Mortem oppete pro patria.
Ne quavis de re doleas.
Ex ingenuis liberos crea.
Sperato tanquam mortalis:
Parcito tanquam immortalis.
Ne efferaris gloriâ.
Largire cum utilitate.

Amicis utere.
Mortuum ne irrideto.
Dilige amicos.
Conſule inculpatè.

Dicta BIANTIS PRIENENSIS.

IN ſpeculo teipſum contemplare, & ſi formoſus apparebis, age quæ deceant formam; ſin deformis, quod in facie minus eſt, vel deeſt, id morum penſato pulchritudine.
Audito multa;
Loquere pauca.
De Numine ne malè loquaris;
Quid ſit autem auſculta.
Priùs autem intellige; & deinde ad opus accede.
Ne ob divitias laudâris virum indignum.
Perſuaſione cape, non vi.
Compara in adoleſcentia quidem modeſtiam, in ſenectute verò prudentiam.

Dicta PITTACI MITYLENÆI.

QUÆ facturus es, ea ne dixeris; fruſtratus enim rideberis.
Depoſitum redde.
Deſidioſus ne eſto.
A familiaribus in minutis rebus læſus, feras.
Amico ne maledixeris.
Inimicum ne putes amicum.
Uxori dominare [*Chriſtianè.*]
Quæ feceris parentibus, eadem à liberis exſpecta.
Inter amicos ne fueris judex.
Ne contende cum parentibus, etiamſi juſta dixeris.
Ne geras imperium, priuſquam parere didiceris.
Infortunatum ne irriſeris.
Audito libenter.
Ne lingua præcurrat mentem.
Ne feſtines loqui.
Noſce teipſum.
Legibus pare.
Voluptatem cöerce.
Ne quid nimis.
Inimicitiam ſolve.
Ante omnia venerare Numen.
Parentes revere.
Quæ fieri non poſſunt, cave concupiſcas.
Uxorum ducito ex æqualibus; ne, ſi ex ditioribus duxeris, dominos tibi pares, non affines.

Dicta CLEOBULI LINDII.

NE ſis unquam elatus.
Domûs curam age.
Libros evolve.
Juſtè judicato.
Bonis benefacito.
Liberos tibi chariſſimos erudi.
A maledicentia temperato.
Suſpicionem abjicito.
Parentes patientiâ vince.
Beneficii accepti memento.
Inferiorem ne rejicias.
Aliena ne concupiſcas.
Ne teipſum præcipites in diſcrimen.

Res amici diligas, ac perinde ſerves ut tuas.
Lapis auri index, aurum homi[num.
Quod oderis, alteri ne feceris.
Voto nil pretioſius.
Ne cui miniteris; eſt enim muliebre.
Citiùs ad infortunatos amicos, quàm ad fortunatos proficiſcere.
Mendax calumniâ vitam corrumpit.
Mendaces odit quiſque prudens & ſapiens.

Dicta CHILONIS LACEDÆMONII.

NOſce te ipſum.
Ne cui invideas mortalia.
Temperantiam exerce.
Turpia fuge.
Tempori parce.
Juſtè rem para.
Sapientiâ utere.
Multitudini place.
Oderis calumnias.
Ne quid ſuſpiceris.
Moribus probatis eſto.
Ne fueris oneroſus.

Dicta SOLONIS ATHENIENSIS.

DEUM cole.
Parentes revere.
Amicis ſuccurre.
Veritatem ſuſtineto.
Ne jurato.
Legibus pareto.
Cogita quod juſtum eſt.
Iracundiæ moderare.
Virtutem laudato.
Malos odio proſequitor.

Dicta THALETIS MILESII.

PRincipem honora.
Amicos probato.
Similis tui ſis.
Nemini promittito.
Quod adeſt boni conſulito.
A vitiis abſtineto.
Gloriam ſectare.
Vitæ curam age.
Pacem dilige.
Laudatus eſto apud omnes.
Suſurronem ex ædibus ejice.

GULIELMI LILII *Monita Pædagogica*; ſive, *Carmen de Moribus ad ſuos Diſcipulos.*

QUI mihi diſcipulus, Puer, es, cupis atque doceri,
Huc ades, hæc animo concipe dicta tuo.
Manè citus lectum fuge, mollem diſcute ſomnum;
Templa petas ſupplex, & venerare Deum.
Attamen in primis facies ſit lota manuſque;
Sint nitidæ veſtes, comptaque cæſaries.
Deſidiam fugiens, cùm te ſchola noſtra vocârit,
Adſis; nulla pigræ ſit tibi cauſa moræ.

Me Præceptorem cùm videris, ore ſaluta,
Et condiſcipulos ordine quoſque tuos.
Tu quoque fac ſedeas, ubi te ſediſſe jubemus:
Inque loco, niſi ſis juſtus abire, mane.
Ac magis ut quiſque eſt doctrinæ munere clarus,
Hoc magis is clarâ ſede locandus erit.
Scalpellum, calami, atramentum, charta, libelli,
Sint ſemper ſtudiis arma parata tuis.
Si quid dictabo, ſcribes: at ſingula rectè:
Nec macula, aut ſcriptis menda ſit ulla tuis.
Sed tua nec lacenis dictata aut carmina chartis
Mandes, quæ libris inſeruiſſe decet.
Sæpe recognoſcas tibi lecta, animoque revolvas:
Si dubites, nunc hos conſule, nunc alios.
Qui dubitat, qui ſæpe rogat, mea dicta tenebit;
Is qui nil dubitat, nil capit inde boni.
Diſce, puer, quæſo; noli dediſcere quicquam:
Ne mens te inſimulet conſcia deſidiæ.
Siſque animo attentus: quid enim docuiſſe juvabit,
Si mea non firmo pectore verba premas?
Nil tam difficile eſt, quod non ſolertia vincat:
Invigila, & parta eſt gloria militiæ.
Nam veluti flores tellus, nec ſemina profert,
Ni ſit continuo victa labore manùs:
Sic puer, ingenium ſi non exercitet, ipſum
Tempus et amittit, ſpem ſimul ingenii.
Eſt etiam ſemper lex in ſermone tenenda,
Ne nos offendat improba garrulitas.
Incumbens ſtudio, ſubmiſsâ voce loqueris;
Nobis dum reddis, voce canoris eris.
Et quæcunque mihi reddes, diſcantur ad unguem;
Singula & abjecto verbula redde libro.
Nec verbum quiſquam dicturo ſuggerat ullum;
Quod puero exitium non mediocre parit.
Si quicquam rogito, ſic reſpondere ſtudebis,
Ut laudem dictis & mereare decus.
Non linguâ celeri nimis, aut laudabere tardâ;
Eſt virtus medium, quod tenuiſſe juvat.
Et quoties loqueris memor eſto loquare Latine;
Et veluti ſcopulos, barbara verba fuge.
Præterea ſocios, quoties te cunque rogabunt,
Inſtrue; & ignaros ad mea vota trahe.

Qui docet indoctos, licet indoctiſſimus eſſet,
Ipſe brevi reliquis doctior eſſe queat.
Sed tu nec ſtolidos imitabere Grammaticaſtros,
Ingens Romani dedecus eloquii:
Quorum tam fatuus nemo, aut tam barbarus ore eſt,
Quem non auctorem, barbara turba probet.
Grammaticas rectè ſi vis cognoſcere leges,
Diſcere ſi cupias cultiùs ore loqui:
Addiſcas veterum clariſſima ſcripta virorum,
Et quos auctores turba Latina docet.
Nunc te Virgilius, nunc ipſe Terentius optat,
Nunc ſimul amplecti te Ciceronis opus:
Quos qui non didicit, nil præter ſomnia vidit,
Certat & in tenebris vivere Cimmeriis.
Sunt quos delectat (ſtudio virtutis honeſtæ
Poſthabito) nugis tempora conterere:
Sunt quibus eſt cordi, manibus, pedibuſve ſodales,
Aut alio quovis ſolicitare modo;
Eſt alius, qui ſe dum clarum ſanguine jactat,
Inſulſo reliquis improbat ore genus.
Te tam prava ſequi nolim veſtigia morum;
Ne tandem factis præmia digna feras.
Nil dabis, aut vendes, nil permutabis emeſve,
Ex damno alterius commoda nulla feres.
Inſuper & nummos, irritamenta malorum,
Mitte aliis; puerum nil niſi pura decent.
Clamor, rixa, joci, mendacia, furta, cachinni,
Sint procul à vobis; Martis & arma procul.
Nil penitus dices, quod turpe, aut non ſit honeſtum;
Eſt vitæ ac partiter janua lingua necis.
Ingens crede nefas cuiquam maledicta referre,
Jurare aut magni nomina ſacra Dei.
Denique ſervabis res omnes atque libellos,
Et tecum, quoties iſque rediſque, feres.
Effuge vel cauſas faciunt quæcunque nocentem,
In quibus & nobis diſplicuiſſe potes.

DIONYSII CATONIS

Diſticha de Moribus, ad Filium:

Recognita de novo ad Metaphraſin Joſ. Scalligeri, *ejuſdemque* D. Eraſmi, P. Scriverii & M. Zuer. Boxhornii *Notas & Caſtigationes, à* T. R.

In uſum Scholarum.

Illis quæ cecinit Themis aut Thymbræus Apollo,
Non canit hicce catus deteriora Cato.

Prefatio cum breviſſimis Præceptis.

QUum animadverterem quàm plurimos homines graviter errare in via morum, ſuccurendum & conſulendum eorum opinioni exiſtimavi, maximè ut gloriosè viverent, & honorem contingerent. Nunc te (fili chariſſime) docebo, quo pacto mores animi tui componas. Igitur præcepta mea ita legito, ut intelligas: Legere enim, & non intelligere, negligere eſt.

ITaque Deo ſupplica.
Parentes ama.
Cognatos cole.
Magiſtrum metue.
Datum ſerva.
Foro te para.
Cum bonis ambula.
Ad conſilium ne acceſſeris, antequam voceris.
Mundus eſtò.
Saluta libenter.
Majori cede.
Minori parce.
Rem tuam cuſtodi.
Verecundiam ſerva.
Diligentiam adhibe.
Libros lege.
Quos legeris memento.
Familiam cura.
Blandus eſto.
Iraſci ab re noli.
Neminem irriſeris.
Miſerum ne irriſeris.
Mutuum dato.
Cui des videto.
In judicium adeſto.
Conjugem ama.
Liberos erudi.
Patere legem quam ipſe tuleris.
Pauca in convivio loquere.
Convivare rarò.
Quod ſatis eſt dormi.
Jusjurandum ſerva.
Vino te tempera
Pugna pro patria.
Nil temere credideris.
Tu te conſule.
Meretricem fuge.
Literas diſce.
Nihil mentiri debes.
Bonis benefacito.
Maledicus ne eſto.
Exiſtimationem retine.
Æquum judica.
Parentes patientiâ vince.

Beneficii accepti memor esto,
Ad prætorium stato.
Consultus esto.
Utere virtute.
Iracundiam tempera.
Trocho lude.
Aleas fuge.
Nihil ex arbitrio virium feceris.
Minorem te ne contempseris.
Aliena concupiscere noli.
Illud studе quod justum est.
Amorem libenter ferto.

DISTICHORUM de Moribus,

LIBER I.

Dei cultus præcipuus.

1 SI Deus est animus, nobis ut carmina dicunt.
Hic tibi præcipuè sit purâ mente colendus.

Somnolentia vitanda.

2 Plus vigila semper, nec somno deditus esto:
Nam diuturna quies vitiis alimenta ministrat.

Cohibenda lingua.

3 Virtutem primam esse puta compescere linguam;
Proximus ille Deo, qui scit ratione tacere.

Sibi ipsi conveniendum.

4 Sperne repugnando tibi tu contrarius esse.
Conveniet nulli qui secum dissidet ipse.

Nemo temere culpandus.

5 Si vitam inspicias hominum, si denique mores,
Cùm culpas alios; nemo sine crimine vivit.

Utilitas divitiis anteponenda.

6 Quæ nocitura tenes, quamvis sint chara, relinque:
Utilitas opibus præponi tempore debet.

Mores pro tempore mutandi.

7 Et † levis & constans, ut res expostulat esto:
Temporibus mores sapiens sine crimine mutat.

† *al.* Constans aut levis, *repugnante metro.*

Uxori non semper assentiendum.

8 Nil temere uxori de servis crede querenti:
Sæpe etenim mulier, quem conjunx diligit, odit.

Instandum correctioni amici.

9 Cùmque mones aliquem, nec se velit ipse moneri,
Si tibi sit charus, noli desistere cœptis.

Stulti verbis non vincuntur.

10 Contra verbosos noli contendere verbis:
Sermo datur cunctis, animi sapientia paucis.

Amicus sibi quisque primus.

11 Dilige sic alios, ut sis tibi charus amicus,
Sic bonus esto bonis, ne te mala damna sequantur.

Rumores ſpargere vetitum.

Rumores fuge, ne incipias novus auctor haberi:
Nam nulli tacuiſſe nocet, nocet eſſe locutum.

Fides aliena non promittenda.

Rem tibi promiſſam certò promittere noli:
Rara fides ideo eſt, quia multi multa loquuntur.

Judex quiſque ſit ſui.

Cùm te aliquis laudat, judex tuus eſſe memento:
Plus aliis de te, quàm tu tibi credere noli.

Beneficiorum ratio.

Officium alterius multis narrare memento:
Atque aliis cùm tu benefeceris, ipſe ſileto.

Senio bene geſta referenda.

Multorum cùm facta ſenex & dicta recenſes,
Fac tibi ſuccurrant, juvenis quæ feceris ipſe.

Suſpicionis labes.

Ne cures ſi quis tacito ſermone loquatur:
Conſcius ipſe ſibi de ſe putat omnia dici.

In proſperis de adverſis cogitandum.

Cùm fueris felix, quæ ſunt adverſa caveto:
Non eodem curſu reſpondent ultima primis.

Mors alterius non ſperanda.

Cùm dubia & fragilis ſit nobis vita tributa,
In morte alterius ſpem tu tibi ponere noli.

Animus in dono æſtimandus.

Exiguum munus cùm dat tibi pauper amicus,
Accipito placidè, plenè & laudare memento.

Paupertas toleranda.

Infantem nudum cùm te natura creârit,
Paupertatis onus patienter ferre memento.

Mors non formidanda.

Ne timeas illam, quæ vitæ eſt ultima finis:
Qui mortem metuit, quod vivit perdit id ipſum.

Amicorum ingratitudo fugienda.

Si tibi pro meritis nemo reſpondet amicus,
Incuſare Deum noli, ſed te ipſe coërce.

Frugalitas.

Ne tibi quid deſit quæſitis utere parcè:
Utque quod eſt ſerves, ſemper tibi deeſſe putato.

Promiſſio iterata moleſta.

Quod præſtare potes, ne bis promiſeris ulli:
Ne ſis ventoſus, dum vis bonus ipſe videri.

Ars arte deludenda.

Qui ſimulat verbis, nec corde eſt fidus amicus:
Tu quoque fac ſimile; ſic ars deluditur arte.

Blandiloquentia suspecta.

27 Noli homines blando nimium sermone probare :
Fistula dulcè canit, volucrem dum decipit auceps.

Liberi artibus instruendi.

28 Cùm tibi sint nati, nec opes ; tunc artibus illos
Instrue, quò possint inopem defendere vitam.

Res quomodo æstimandæ.

29 Quod vile est, carum ; quod carum est, vile putato :
Sic tibi nec cupidus, nec avarus habeberis ulli.

Culpata non facienda.

30 Quæ culpare soles, ea tu ne feceris ipse :
Turpe est doctori, cùm culpa redarguit ipsum.

Concedenda petenda.

31 Quod justum est petito, vel quod videatur honestum :
Nam stultum est petere id, quod possit jure negari.

Nota ignotis non commutanda.

32 Ignotum tibi tu noli præponere notis :
Cognita judicio constant, incognita casu.

Dies quisque supremus putandus.

33 Cùm dubia incertis versetur vita periclis,
Pro lucro tibi pone diem † quocunque laboras.

† *al.* quicunque.

Obsecundandum amicis.

34 Vincere cùm possis, interdum cede sodali :
Obsequio quoniam dulces retinentur amici.

Amicitiæ mutua officia.

35 Ne dubites, cùm magna petes, impendere parva :
His etenim rebus conjungit gratia charos.

Amicitia rixas odit.

36 Litem inferre cave, cùm quo tibi gratia juncta est :
Ira odium generat, concordia nutrit amorem.

Castigatio sine ira.

37 Servorum ob culpam cùm te dolor urget in iram,
Ipse tibi moderare, tuis ut parcere possis.

Patientia vincendum.

38 Quem superare potes, interdum vince ferendo :
Maxima enim morum semper patientia virtus.

Quæsita sunt servanda.

39 Conserva potiùs, quæ sunt jam parta labore :
Cùm labor in damno est, crescit mortalis egestas,

Consulendum sibi in primis.

40 Dapsilis interdum notis, & charus amicis,
Cùm fueris felix, semper tibi proximus esto.

LIB. II. PRÆFATIO.

TElluris ſi fortè velis cognoſcere cultus,
Virgilium legito. Quòd ſi magè nôſſe laboras
erbarum vires, Macer has tibi carmine dicet,
orporis ut cunctos poſſis depellere morbos.
i Romana cupis & civica noſcere bella,
ucanum quæras, qui Martis prælia dixit.
i quis amare velis, vel diſcere amare legendo,
aſonem petito. Sin autem cura tibi hæc eſt,
t ſapiens vivas, audi quæ diſcere poſſis,
er quæ ſemotum vitiis traducitur ævum.
rgo ades, & quæ ſit ſapientia diſce legendo.

De omnibus bene merendum.

SI potes, ignotis etiam prodeſſe memento:
Utilius regno eſt meritis acquirere amicos.

Arcana Dei non ſcrutanda.

Mitte arcana Dei, cœlumque inquirere quid ſit:
Cùm ſis mortalis, quæ ſunt mortalia cura.

Mortis timor guadia vitæ pellit.

Linque metum lethi, nam ſtultum eſt tempore in omni,
Dum mortem metuis, amittere guadia vitæ.

Iracundia cavenda.

Iratus de re incerta contendere noli:
Impedit ira animum ne poſſit cernere verum.

Expendendum ubi opus eſt.

Fac ſumptum properè, cùm res deſiderat ipſa:
Dandum etenim eſt aliquid, cum tempus poſtulat aut res.

Fortuna modica tutior.

Quod nimium eſt fugito, parvo gaudere memento:
Tuta magè eſt puppis modico quæ flumine fertur.

Occulta vitia reticenda.

Quod pudeat ſocios prudens celare memento:
Ne plures culpent id, quod tibi diſplicet uni.

Occulta tandem revelantur.

Nolo putes pravos homines peccata lucrari:
Temporibus peccata latent, ſed tempore † parent.

† *i. e.* apparent, *vulgo*, patent, *contra metri legem.*

Imbecillitas virtute compenſatur.

Corporis exigui vires contemnere noli:
Conſilio pollet cui vim natura negavit.

Cedendum potiori ad tempus.

Cui ſcièris non eſſe parem te, tempore cede:
Victorem à victo ſuperari ſæpe videmus.

Rixandum cum familiaribus non esse.

Adversus notum noli contendere verbis:
Lis minimis verbis interdum maxima crescit.

Fortuna non quærenda sorte.

Quid Deus intendat, noli perquirere sorte:
Quid statuat de te, sine te deliberat ipse.

Luxus odium generat.

Invidiam nimio cultu vitare memento:
Quæ si non lædit, sine tamen hanc sufferre molestum est.

Animus non deponendus ob iniquum judicium.

Esto animo forti, cùm sis damnatus iniquè:
Nemo diu gaudet, qui judice vincit iniquo.

Reconciliatis lis non refricanda.

Litis præteritæ noli maledicta referre:
Post inimitias iram meminisse malorum est.

Teipsum neque lauda neque culpa.

Nec te collaudes, nec te culpaveris ipse:
Hoc faciunt stulti, quos gloria vexat inanis.

Parsimonia.

Utere quæsitis parcè, cùm sumptus abundat:
Labitur exiguo, quod partum est tempore longo.

Supercilium nonnunquam deponendum.

Insipiens esto, cùm tempus postulat, aut res:
Stultitiam simulare loco prudentia summa est.

Neque prodigus, neque avarus.

Luxuriam fugito; simul & vitare memento:
Crimen avaritiæ: nam sunt contraria famæ.

Loquaci parum credendum.

Noli tu quædam referenti credere semper:
Exigua iis tribuenda fides qui multa loquuntur.

Ebrius vinum non accusat.

Quæ * potu peccas, ignoscere tu tibi noli: * *al.* potus.
Nam nullum crimen vini est, sed culpa bibentis.

Amicis consilia credenda.

Consilium arcanum tacito committe sodali:
Corporis auxilium medico committe fideli.

Successus malorum ne te offendat.

Indignos noli successus ferre molestè:
Indulget fortuna malis ut lædere possit.

Futuros casus prævidendos.

Prospice, qui veniunt, hos casus esse ferendos:
Nam levius lædit, quicquid prævidimus antè.

Animus in adversis spe fovendus.

Rebus in adversis animum submittere noli:
Spem retine: spes una hominem nec morte relinquit.

Opportunitas cum contingit tenenda.

Rem tibi quam noſcis aptam, dimittere noli:
Fronte capillatâ, poſt eſt occaſio calva.

Futura ex præteritis colligenda.

Quod ſequitur ſpecta, quodque imminet antè, videto:
Illum imitare Deum, qui partem ſpectat utramque.

Vitæ ratio habenda.

Fortiùs ut valeas, interdum parcior eſto:
Pauca voluptati debentur, plura ſaluti.

Multitudini cedendum.

Judicium populi nunquam contempſeris unus:
Ne nulli placeas, dum vis contemnere multos.

Valetudo curanda.

Sit tibi præcipuè, quod primum eſt, cura ſalutis:
Tempora ne culpes, cùm ſis tibi cauſa doloris.

Somnia non obſervanda.

Somnia ne cures: nam mens humana quod optat,
Dum vigilans ſperat, per ſomnum cernit id ipſum.

LIB. III. PRÆFATIO.

HOC quicunque voles carmen cognoſcere, Lector,
Quum præcepta ferat quæ ſunt gratiſſima vitæ,
Commoda multa feres. Sin autem ſpreveris illud,
Non me ſcriptorem, ſed te neglexeris ipſe.

Dandam eſſe operam literis.

INſtrue præceptis animum, nec diſcere ceſſes:
Nam ſine doctrina vita eſt quaſi mortis imago.

Moribus captanda fama.

Fortunæ donis ſemper parere memento:
Non oppibus bona fama datur, ſed moribus ipſis.

Rectè agendo aliorum linguam ne timeas.

Cùm rectè vivas, ne cures verba malorum:
Arbitrii noſtri non eſt quid quiſque loquatur.

Amici crimen celandum.

Productas teſtis, ſalvo tamen ante pudore,
Quantumcunque potes, celato crimen amici.

Blandiloquentia ſuſpecta.

Sermones blandos blæſoſque cavere memento:
Simplicitas veri * fama eſt, fraus ficta loquendi.

* *Scal.* fama, i. e. *indicium*, *al.* norma.

Ignava vita fugienda.

Segnitiem fugito, quæ vitæ ignavia fertur:
Nam cùm animus languet, conſumit inertia corpus.

Animus feſſus relaxandus.

Interpone tuiis interdum gaudia curis:
Ut poſſis animo quemvis ſufferre laborem.

Malo animo neminem reprehendas.

Alterius dictum, aut factum, ne carpseris unquam:
Exemplo simili ne te derideat alter.

Hæreditas augenda.

Quod tibi sors dederit tabulus suprema notato,
Augendo serva; ne sis quem fama loquatur.

Senectus sit munifica.

Cùm tibi divitiæ superant in fine senectæ;
Munificus facito vivas, non parcus amicis.

Verba attendenda, non os loquentis.

Utile consilium dominus ne despice servi,
Nullius sensum, si prodest, tempseris unquam.

Præsenti utendum fortunâ.

Rebus & in censu si non est quod fuit antè,
Fac vivas contentus eo quod tempora præbent.

Uxor spe dotis non quærenda.

Uxorem fuge ne ducas sub nomine dotis:
Nec retinere velis, si cœperit esse molesta.

Alieno sapere exemplo.

Multorum disce exemplo quæ facto sequaris,
Quæ fugias: vita est nobis aliena magistra.

Nihil ultra vires.

Quod potes, id tentes; operis ne pondere pressus,
Succumbat labor, & frustra tentata relinquas.

Consentire videtur qui tacet.

Quod nôsti haud rectè factum, nolito silere:
Ne videare malos imitari velle tacendo.

Rigor favore temperandus.

Judicis auxilium sub iniqua lege rogato:
Ipsæ etiam leges cupiunt ut jure regantur.

Feras quæ tua culpa pateris.

Quod meritò pateris, patienter ferre memento:
Cùmque reus tibi sis, ipsum te judice damna.

Multa legenda, sed cum judicio.

Multa legas facito: perlectis * perlege multa: * *al.* neglige.
Nam miranda canunt, sed non credenda poëtæ.

Modeste in convivio loquendum.

Inter convivas fac sis sermone modestus:
Ne dicare loquax, dum vis urbanus haberi.

Iracundia uxoris non formidanda.

Conjugis iratæ nolito verba timere:
Nam lachrymis struit insidias, dum fœmina plorat.

Quæsitis utendum, non abutendum.

Utere quæsitis, sed ne videaris abuti:
Qui sua consumunt, cùm deest, aliena sequuntur.

Mors non formidanda.

Fac tibi proponas mortem non esse timendam:
Quæ bona si non est, finis tamen illa malorum est.

Uxor proba, si loquax, ferenda.

Uxoris linguam, si frugi est, ferre memento:
Namque malum est te nolle pati, hanc non posse tacere.

Pietas erga parentes.

Æquâ diligito charos pietate parentes:
Nec matrem offendas, dum vis bonus esse parenti.

LIB. IV. PRÆFATIO.

SEcuram quicunque cupis traducere vitam,
Nec vitiis hærere animum, que moribus obsunt;
Hæc præcepta tibi semper relegenda memento:
Invenies aliquid quo * te nitare magistro.

* *al.* quo vitæ utare. *al.* tu te utare.

Divitiarum contemptus.

DEspice divitias, si vis animo esse beatus;
Quas qui suspiciunt, mendicant semper, avari.

Vivere secundum naturam optimum.

Commoda naturæ nullo tibi tempore deerunt,
Si contentus eo fueris quod postulat usus.

Res ratione regenda.

Cùm sis incautus, nec rem ratione gubernes,
Noli fortunam, quæ † nulla est, dicere cæcam.

† *al.* non est.

Amor pecuniæ ad usum.

Dilige † denarium, sed parcè dilige formam,
Quam nemo sanctus, nec honestus captat ‡ habere.

† *al.* denarî. ‡ *al.* ab ære.

In valetudine ne oppibus parcas.

Quum fueris locuples corpus curare memento:
Æger dives habet nummos, * sed non habet ipsum.

* *al.* se.

Castigatio paterna ferenda.

Verbera cùm tuleris discens aliquando magistri,
Fer patris imperium, cùm verbis exit in iram.

Certa & utilia agenda.

Res age quæ prosunt: rursus vitare memento
In quibus error inest, nec spes est certa laboris.

Libenter donandum.

Quod donare potes, gratis † concede roganti:
Nam rectè fecisse bonis in parte ‡ lucrosum est.

† *al.* ne vende. ‡ *al.* lucrorum.

Suspicio statim expendenda.

Quod tibi suspectum est, confestim discute quid sit:
Namque solent, primò quæ sunt neglecta, nocere.

Venus abstinentia cohibenda.

Cùm te detineat Veneris damnosa voluptas,
Indulgere gulæ noli, quæ ventris amica est.

Homo malus, ferra pessima.

Cùm tibi proponas animalia cuncta timere,
Unum hominem tibi præcipio plus esse timendum.

Sapientia fortitudini præferenda.

Cùm tibi prævalidæ fuerint in corpore vires,
Fac sapias; sic tu poteris vir fortis haberi.

Amicus cordis medicus.

Auxilium à notis petito, si fortè laboras:
Nec quisquam melior medicus, quàm fidus amicus.

Sacrificium spiritus dejectus.

Cùm sis ipse nocens, moritur cur victima pro te?
Stultitia est morte alterius sperare salutem.

Amicus ex moribus deligendus.

Cùm tibi vel socium, vel fidum quæris amicum,
Non tibi fortuna est hominis, sed vita petenda.

Avaritia vitanda.

Utere quæsitis opibus; fuge nomen avari:
Quid tibi divitiæ prosunt, si pauper abundas?

Voluptas inimica famæ.

Si famam servare cupis, dum vivis, honestam;
Fac fugias animo, quæ sunt mala gaudia vitæ.

Senem etiam dilirum ne irriseris.

Cùm sapias animo noli irridere senectam;
Nam quicunque senet, sensus puerilis in illo est.

Opes fluxæ, ars perpetua.

Disce aliquid; nam cum subitò fortuna recessit,
Ars remanet, vitamque hominis non deserit unquam.

Mores ex verbis cogniti.

Perspicito tecum tacitus, quid quisque loquatur:
Sermo etenim mores & celat & indicat idem.

Ars usu juvanda.

Exerce studium, quamvis perceperis artem:
Ut cura ingenium, sic et manus adjuvat usum.

Vitæ contemptus.

Multùm ne cures venturi tempora fati:
Non metuit mortem qui scit contemnere vitam.

Discendum & docendum.

Disce, sed à doctis; indoctos ipse doceto:
Propaganda etenim rerum doctrina bonarum est.

Bibendi ratio.

Hoc bibe quod possis, si tu vis vivere sanus:
Morbi causa mali nimia est * quandoque voluptas.

* *al.* quæcunquæ.

Ne damnes quod probaveris.

Laudâris quodcunque palàm, quodcunque probâris,
Hoc vide nec rursus levitatis crimine damnes.

Circumſpectus utrâquè fortunâ eſto.

Tranquillis rebus quæ ſunt adverſa † timeto : † *al.* caveto.
Rurſus in adverſis meliùs ſperare memento.

Studio creſcit ſapientia.

Diſcere ne ceſſes ; curâ ſapientia creſcit :
Rara datur longo prudentia temporis uſu.

Parce laudandum.

Parcè laudato ; nam quem tu ſæpe probâris,
Una dies, qualis fuerit, monſtrabit amicus.

Diſcere non pudeat.

Ne pudeat, quæ neſciêris, te velle doceri :
Scire aliquid laus eſt, † turpe eſt nil diſcere velle. † *al.* culpa.

Rebus utendum ad ſobrietatem.

Cum Venere & Baccho lis eſt, ſed juncta voluptas :
Quod blandum eſt animo complectere, ſed fuge lites.

Triſtibus & tacitis non fidendum.

Demiſſos animo, ac tacitos vitare memento :
Quâ flumen placidum eſt, forſàn latet altiùs unda.

Sors ſorti conferenda.

Cùm tibi diſpliceat rerum fortuna tuarum,
Alterius ſpecta † quo ſis diſcrimine pejor. † *al.* qui ſis.

Ultra vires nihil aggrediendum.

Quod potes id tenta : nam littus carpare remis
Tutius eſt multò, quàm † velis tendere in altum. † *al.* velum.

Cum juſto inique non contendendum.

Contra hominem juſtum pravè contendere noli :
Semper enim Deus injuſtus ulciſcitur iras.

Fortuna utraque æque ferenda.

Ereptis opibus noli tu flere querendo :
Sed gaude potius, † tibi ſi contingat habere. † *al.* ſi non.

Ab amico quid ferendum.

Eſt jactura gravis, quæ ſunt, amittere damnis :
Sunt quædam, quæ ferre decet patienter amicum.

Tempori non confidendum.

Tempora longa tibi noli promittere vitæ :
Quocunque ingrederis ſequitur mors, corpus ut umbra.

Deus quibus placandus.

† Thure Deum placa ; vitulum ſine creſcat aratro : † *al.* Ture.
Ne credas placare Deum, dum cæde litatur.

A potentioribus læſus diſſimula.

Cede locum læſus, fortunæ cede potenti :
Lædere qui potuit, prodeſſe aliquando valebit.

Caſtiga teipſum.

Cùm quid peccâris, caſtiga te ipſe ſubinde :
Vulnera dum ſanas, dolor eſt medicina doloris.

Amicus mutatus non vituperandus.

Damnâris nunquam, poſt longum tempus, amicum:
Mutavit mores; ſed pignora prima memento.

Beneficiis collatis attende.

Gratior officiis, quò ſis magè charior, eſto;
Ne nomen ſubeas quod dicitur † officipérda. *al.* officiperdæ.

Suſpicionem tolle.

Suſpectus cave ſis, ne ſis miſer omnibus horis:
Nam timidis & ſuſpectis aptiſſima mors eſt.

Humanitas erga ſervos.

Cùm fueris famulos proprios mercatus in uſus,
Ut ſervos dicas, homines tamen eſſe memento.

Occaſionem rei commodæ ne prætermittas.

Quamprimùm rapienda tibi eſt occaſio prima,
Ne rurſus quæras, quæ jam neglexeris antè.

Non lætandum repentino obitu.

Morte repentinâ noli gaudere malorum:
Felices obeunt quorum ſine crimine vita eſt.

Pauper ſimulatum vitet amicum.

Cùm tibi ſit conjux, † ne res & fama laboret, *al.* nec.
Vitandum ducas inimicum nomen amici.

Junge ſtudium.

Cùm tibi contigerit ſtudio cognoſcere multa;
Fac diſcas multa, & vites † nil velle doceri. † *al.* non.

Brevitas memoriæ amica.

Miraris verbis nudis me ſcribere verſus?
Hos brevitas ſenſûs fecit conjungere binos.

JOANNIS SULPITII Verulani, *de Moribus & Civilitate Puerorum, Carmen.*

QUos decet in vita mores ſervare docemus,
Virtuti ut ſtudeas, literuliſque ſimul.
Quæ te igitur moneo, miti, puer, indole ſerva;
Præque tuis oculis hæc mea juſſa tene.
Omnibus in rebus ſtudeas precor eſſe modeſtus:
Sis avidus laudis, ſit tibi cura boni.
Sis pius ac ſanctus, nec non venerare parentes:
Et noceas nulli, ſurripiaſque nihil.
Futilis & mendax nunquam, nec credulus eſto:
Dedecus & metuas, & reverere bonos.
Improba peſtiferi fugias commercia cœtûs,
Sic & honorus eris, ſic eris ipſe bonus,

Nec maledicta refer, nec promas turpia dictu:
Eſt ſtomachoſa quidem dicere turpe tibi.
Segnitiem fugito, quæ vitæ commoda pellit:
Parce gulæ turpi, luxuriamque fuge.
Parce & avaritiæ; bilem frænare memento,
Atque animi faſtus, invidiamque ſimul.
Fidus ſis audenſque bonis; temerarius eſſe
Deſpice; non audax ſis, timiduſve nimis.
Eſto verecundus: rectum te lectus habebit;
Detege nec ſocium, nec tua membra, puer.
Nec ſis difficilis nimium, nimiumpue ſeverus,
Sed bonus & blandus conſpiciare, puer.
Nec penitus mutum, nec te decet eſſe loquacem:
Convenit ille toro, convenit iſte foro.
Hæc te ſervantem vitæ laus ſpeſque futuræ;
Spernentem turpis pœnaque morſque manent.
Nunc faciles aures, animum quoque trade ſerenum;
Morigerare mihi, mollia juſſa dabo.
Sit ſine labe toga, & facies ſit lota manuſque;
Stiria nec naſo pendeat ulla tuo,
Et nihil emineat, ſint & ſine ſordibus ungues;
Sit coma, ſit turbi calceus abſque luto.
Linguaque non rigeat, careant rubigine dentes:
Atque palam pudeat te fricuiſſe caput;
Exprimere & pulices, ſcabiemque urgere nocentem;
Ne te ſordidulum, qui videt iſta, vocet.
Seu ſpuis, aut mungis nares, nutaſve, memento
Poſt tua concuſſum vertere terga caput.
Mucorem haud tangas digitis, ſputumve reſorbas:
Panniculo naſum mungere nempe decet.
Et ructare cave, quin os in terga reflectas:
Stringe os, & crepitum comprime, quæſo, puer.
Munditiæque tibi placeant; medio quoque cultu
Utere, ne turpis vel videare levis.
Non ſum qui laudem ſummo te accumbere mane:
Judice conveniens me dabit hora cibum.
Nec vos ante focum cœnas producite longas:
Eſſe decet vivas, vivere non ut edas.
Nec ſis vinoſus, quamvis potâſſe Catonem
Fama refert; fugias ſumere vina mera.
Namque cibus nimius, potus quoque, maxima pœna;
Corporis & vires ingeniique rapit.

Insternas mensam: nitidas imponito quadras,
Atque salem & Cererem, flumina, vina, dapes.
Deinde precare Deum, qui nobis cuncta benige
Suggerit, ut sanctos det tibi mane cibos.
Atque, puer, jubeo, sedeas vel rarò, sed astans
Pocula porge celer, tolle, repone dapes.
Juraque convivas super importare, minister,
Effuge; nam turpis sæpe fit inde toga.
Quodque jubebit herus, facilis semperque subito;
Quemque tibi dederit, tu tibi sume locum.
Et licet antiqui cubuissent pectore prono,
Te colla hæc ætas recta tenere jubet.
Et finito mensæ cubitis hærere potentes:
Tu tantùm faciles pone, repone manus.
Quodque vir egregius pavido tibi porrigit, illud
Sume lubens, grates aptaque verba refer.
Esto tribus digitis, magnos nec fumito morsus;
Nec duplices offas mandere utrinque juvet.
Te vitare velim, cupidus ne ut lurco sonoras
Contractes fauces: mandere rite decet.
Gausape none macules, aut pectus; nec tibi mentum
Stillet; sitve tibi ne manus uncta cave.
Sæpe ora & digitos mappâ siccabis adeptâ;
In quadra faciat nec tua palma moram.
Quod tibi vicinum fuerit tu sume: sodali
Cede tuo, referat dum tamen ille manum.
Dumque in frustra secat, caveos sumpsisse recisa;
Lurco legit dulces absque rubore bolos.
Non, manibus gremio immissis tibe vellicet unguis
Quod sumes: residens non agitato pedes.
Incidasque priùs quàm dens contundat ofellam:
Tingantur rursum ne tibi morsa cave.
Ne lingas digitos, nec rodas turpiter ossa,
Ast ea cultello radere ritè potes.
Sive super mensam cortex cumuletur, & ipsa
Ossa, vel in quadram, præ pedibusve jace.
Nec digitis tenta, nec pinguia deligi frusta:
Et quocunque manus, huc tibi lumen eat.
Nec socium torvè inspicias, quidve ederit ille
Advertas: gestus inspice sæpe tuos.
Pocula cum sumes, tergat tibi mappa labella;
Si tergas manibus, non mihi charus eris.

Una manus sumat pateram, ni hanc jactet in hostem
† Theseus, aut Beli sint monumenta patris:
Hanc binis quòd si manibus captabis, id aptè
Efficies: digitis pocula summe tribus.
Ac teneas oculos, nec supra pocula fare:
Plena aliquo vites sit tibi bucca cibo.
Deme merum cyatho, multum ne fortè superfit,
Quod nolit socius sumere fortè tuus.
Qui sapit, extinguet multo cum fonte falernum,
Et parco lympham diluet ille mero.
Haud facias binos haustus, nec fessus anheles,
Sibila nec labiis stridula prome tuis.
Nec citò sorbebis, velut ovi lutea grati:
Nec nimium tardâ sume falerna morâ.
Unum, sive duo, ad summum tria pocula sumes:
Si hunc numerum excedas, jam mihi potus eris.
Fac videas quodcunque bibes, modicumque pitissa:
Crater, sive calix, det tibi vina, brevis.
Os quòque tergebis semper post pocula: palmas
Ablue, quum mensam deseris, atque labra.
Denique jam grates pro donis reddito Christo,
Qui æternas nobis præparat unus opes.
Inflectensque genu, jungens & brachia, PROSIT
Dicito: mox tolles ordine quæque suo.

† *Vid.* Ovid. Met. 12. *v.* 235. & Virg. Æn. 1. *v.* 733.

REGIMEN MENSÆ honorabile.

Nemo cibum capiat, donec benedictio fiat.

Dum manducatis,
- Vultus hilares habea-
- Sal cultello capia-
- Quod edendum sit, ne peta-
- Non nisi depositum capia-
- Rixas & murmura fugia-
- Manibus erectis sedea-
- Mappam mundam teneą-
- Ne scalpatis cavea-
- Aliis partem tribua-
- Morsus non rejicia-
- Modicum sed crebrò biba-
- Grates DEO per CHRISTUM refera-

tis.

Privetur mensâ, qui spreverit hæc documenta.

F I N I S.

RUDIMENTA PIETATI

In nomine Dei, Patris, Filii, & Spiritûs Sancti. Amen.

ORATIO DOMINICA, *Matth.* VI.

PAter noſter, qui es in cœlis, 1. Sanctificetur nomen t
um. 2. Veniat regnum tuum. 3. Fiat voluntas t
quemadmodum in cœlo, ſic etiam in terra. 4. Panem noſtr
quotidianum da nobis hodie. 5. Et remmitte nobis debita n
ſtra, ſicut & nos remittimus debitoribus noſtris. 6. Et ne
inducas in tentationem, ſed libera nos à malo: quia tuum
regnum, & potentia, & gloria, in ſecula. *Amen.*

SYMBOLUM APOSTOLICUM.

CRedo in Deum Patrem omnipotentem, Creatorem cœli
terræ: 2. Et in Ieſum Chriſtum filium ejus unigenitu
Dominum noſtrum, 3. Qui conceptus eſt de Spiritu Sanc
natus ex Maria Virgine, 4. Paſſus ſub Pontio Pilato, crucifi
us, mortuus, & ſepultus, deſcendit ad inferna; 5. Tertio
reſurrexit à mortuis, 6. Aſcendit ad cœlos, ſedet ad dextra
Dei Patris omnipotentis; 7. Inde venturus eſt judicatum viv
& mortuos. 8. Credo in Spiritum Sanctum. 9. Credo ſa
ctam Eccleſiam catholicam, Sanctorum communionem; 1
Remiſſionem peccatorum; 11. Carnis reſurrectionem; 12.
vitam æternam. *Amen.*

DECALOGUS, *ſive* LEX DEI.

Loquutus eſt DEUS omnia verba hæc. Exod. XX.

EGO ſum Dominus Deus tuus, qui eduxi te ex Ægypt
è domo ſervitutis:

I. Non habebis deos alienos in conſpectu meo.

II. Ne ſculpas tibi ſimulacrum, nec ullam imaginem effi
gas eorum, quæ aut ſupra ſunt in cœlo, aut infra in terr
aut in aquis ſub terra: neque incurves te illis, neque c
las ea. Ego enim ſum Dominus Deus tuus, fortis, zelote

ndicans peccata patrum in filios, idque in tertia & quarta rogenie eorum qui oderunt me, & miſericordiâ utens in milſimam eorum qui diligunt me, & obſervant præcepta mea.

III. Ne uſurpes nomen Domini Dei tui temere. Neque em Dominus dimittet eum impunitum, qui nomen ejus vanè ſurpaverit.

IV. Memento diem Sabbati ſanctifices. Sex diebus operabes, & facies omne opus tuum. At ſeptimo die Sabbatum erit Domino Deo tuo. Non facies ullum opus, nec tu, nec filius tuus, nec filia tua, nec ſervus tuus, nec ancilla tua, nec jumentum tuum, nec advena qui eſt intra portas tuas. Nam ſex diebus fecit Deus cœlum, terram, & mare, & quæcunque in eis ſunt: requievit autem die ſeptimo, ideoque benedixit diei Sabbati, & ſanctificavit eum.

V. Honora patrem tuum, & matrem tuam, ut diu vivas in terra, quam tibi Dominus Deus tuus daturus eſt.

VI. Non occides.

VII. Non committes adulterium.

VIII. Non furaberis.

IX. Non dices contra proximum tuum falſum teſtimonium.

X. Non concupiſes domum proximi tui, non concupiſces uxorem proximi tui, nec ſervum ejus, nec ancillam, nec bovem, nec aſinum, nec quicquam eorum quæ ſunt proximi tui.

Summa Legis, *Matth.* xxii. 34.

Phariſæi, quum audiviſſent quòd IESUS ſilentium impoſuiſſet Sadducæis, congregati ſunt pariter: 35. *Et interrogavit eum unus ex iis qui erat legis peritus, tentans eum, & dicens,* 36. *Præceptor, Quod præceptum maximum eſt in lege?*

37. IESUS autem dixit illi, Ut diligas Dominum Deum tuum, ex toto corde tuo, & ex tota anima tua, & ex omni cogitatione tua. 38. Hoc eſt præceptum maximum & primum. 39. Secundum autem eſt ſimili illi; nempe, Ut diligas proximum tuum ſicut te ipſum.

40. Ex his duobus præceptis pendent Lex & Prophetæ.

Quot ſunt Chriſtianæ Eccleſiæ Sacramenta?

Duo.

Quæ ſunt illa?

Baptiſmus & ſacra Cœna Domini.

Institutio Baptismi:

Cujus hæc ſunt verba. Matth. xxviii. 19. Mar. xvi. 16.

ITE & docete omnes gentes, babtizantes eos, *In nomine Patris, & Filii, & Spiritûs Sancti.* Qui crediderit, & baptizatus fuerit, ſervabitur: Qui non crediderit, condemnabitur. Et docete eos, ut cuſtodiant quicquid mandavi vobis: & ecce ego vobiſcum ſum omnibus diebus uſque ad conſummationem ſeculi.

Hæc promiſſio repetitur, cùm Scriptura Baptiſmum nominat Lavacrum regenerationis, & ablutionem peccatorum. *Tit.* iii. 5. *Act.* xxii. 16.

Institutio Coenæ Domini:

Cujus hæc ſunt verba. 1 Cor. xi. 23.

EGO enim accepi à Domino noſtro id quod tradidi vobis; Quòd Dominus noſter Ieſus Chriſtus, eâ nocte quâ proditus eſt, accepit panem: & gratiis actis, fregit, ac dixit; *Accipite, manducate, hoc eſt corpus meum, quod pro vobis frangitur: Hoc facite ad memoriam mei.* Itidem & poculum, poſtquam cœnâſſet, dicendo; *Hoc poculum eſt novum illud fœdus per meum ſanguinem: Hoc facite, quotieſcunque biberitis, in mei recordationem.* Quotieſcunque enim ederitis panem hunc, & poculum hoc biberitis, mortem Domini annunciabitis, uſque quò venerit. Itaque quiſquis ederit panem hunc, vel biberit poculum Domini indignè, reus eſt corporis & ſanguinis Domini. Probet autem quiſque ſe ipſum, & ita de pane illo edat, & de poculo illo bibat. Nam qui edit & bibit indignè, damnationem ſibi ipſi edit & bibit, quia non decernit corpus Domini.

Hæc promiſſio à Paulo exprimitur, cùm inquit,

POculum gratiarum actionis, quo gratias agimus, nonne communio eſt ſanguinis Chriſti? Panis quem frangimus nonne communio eſt corporis Chriſti? Quoniam unus panis, unum corpus, multi ſumus. Nam omnes unius panis participes ſumus.

Triplex Hominis Status.

1. In ſanctitate & ſanitate.
2. Sub peccato & morte.
3. Sub Chriſti gratia.

QUÆSTIO.

QUis hominem creavit?

Reſponſeo. DEUS.

Q. *Qualem creavit eum?*

R. Sanctum & ſanum, mundique dominum.

Q. *In quem uſum creatus eſt?*

R. Ut Deo inſerviret.

Q. *Quod ſervitii genus ab eo exigebat Deus?*

R. Legis ſuæ præſtationem.

Q. *Num in legis Dei præſtatione perſtitit?*

R. Nequaquam: ſed eam fœdè tranſgreſſus eſt.

Q. *Quæ hujus tranſgreſſionis pœna?*

R. Mors æterna, cùm animæ, tum corporis, & ipſi & poſteris.

Q. *Quomodo inde liberamur?*

R. Merâ Dei gratiâ in Chriſto Ieſu, abſque noſtris meritis.

Q. *Cujuſmodi perſona eſt Chriſtus?*

R. Verè Deus, verèque homo, in perſona una.

Q. *Quomodo nos liberavit?*

R. Morte ſuâ: mortem enim nobis debitam pro nobis ſubiit, noſque eripuit.

Q. *Num omnes liberantur per Chriſtum?*

R. Minimè, ſed ii tantùm qui fide eum amplectuntur.

Q. *Quid eſt fides?*

R. Cum mihi perſuadeo Deum me omneſque Sanctos amare, nobiſque Chriſtum cum omnibus ſuis bonis gratis donare.

Q. *Recenſe ſummam tuæ fidei?*

R. Credo in Deum, Patrem, *&c.*

Q. *Quis operatur hanc fidem in nobis?*

R. Spiritus Sanctus per Verbum & Sacramenta.

Q. *Quomodo eam operatur per Verbum & Sacramenta?*

R. Aperit cor, ut Deo loquenti in Verbo & Sacramentis credamus.

Q. *Quid eſt Dei verbum?*

R. Quicquid veteris ac novi Teſtamenti libris continetur.

Q. *Verbi Dei quot partes?*

R. Duæ, Lex & Evangelium.

Q. *Quid eſt Lex?*

R. Doctrina Dei, debitum à nobis exigens, & quia non ſumus ſolvendo, damnans.

Q. *Quid Evangelium?*

R. Doctrina Christum cum omnibus suis bonis nobis offerens, debitumque nostrum ab eo solutum, nosque liberos esse proclamans.

Q. *Quid Sacramenta?*

R. Sigilla Dei, significantia & donantia nobis Christum cum omnibus suis bonis.

Q. *Quæ hæc Christi bona?*

R. Amor Dei, Spiritus Sanctus, unio nostri cum Christo: unde remissio peccatorum, sanatio naturæ, spiritualis nutritio & vita æterna promanant.

Q. *Quot sunt Novi Testamenti Sacramenta?*

R. Duo, Baptismus & sacra Cœna.

Q. *Quid est Baptismus?*

R. Sacramentum insitionis nostræ in Christum, & ablutionis à peccatis.

Q. *Quid insitio nostri in Christum?*

R. Unio nostri cum Christo: unde manat remissio peccatorum & perpetua recipiscentia.

Q. *Baptismus quid juvat fidem?*

R. Testatur, ut aquâ corpus abluitur, sic, operante Spiritu Sancto, à peccatorum reatu & radice, per fidem in sanguine Christi nos repurgari.

Q. *Quid est sacra Cœna?*

R. Sacramentum spiritualis nutritionis nostræ in Christo.

Q. *Cœna Domini quid juvat fidem?*

R. Testatur, ut pane & vino corpora nostra aluntur & augescunt; sic animas nostras corpore & sanguine Christi crucifixi ali & corroborari ad vitam æternam.

Q. *Corpore & sanguine Christi quomodo alimur?*

R. Dum fide percipimus, & Spiritûs Sancti, qui unà adest, vi, ea nobis applicamus.

Q. *Quando fide percipimus, & nobis applicamus corpus Christi crucifixi?*

R. Dum nobis persuademus, Christi mortem & crucifixionem non minus ad nos pertinere, quàm si ipsi nos pro peccatis nostris crucifixi essemus: Persuasio autem hæc est veræ fidei.

Q. *Vera fides quomodo dignoscitur?*

R. Per bona opera.

Q. *Quomodo cognoscuntur bona opera?*

R. Si Dei legi respondeant.

Q. *Recita Dei legem?*

R. Audi, Israel, Ego sum Dominus, *&c.*

Q. *Hæc lex, de quibus te admonet?*

R. De officio meo erga Deum, & erga proximum.

Q. *Quid offici debes Deo?*

R. Supra omnes eum ut amem.

Q. *Quid debes proximo?*

R. Eum ut amem tanquam me ipsum.

Q. *Potis es hæc præstare?*

R. Minimè gentium; nam

tantisper dum hîc vivimus, habitat in nobis peccatum.

Q. *In Dei filiis quid hinc existit?*

R. Perennis pugna inter carnem & spiritum.

Q. *In hac pugna quomodo nobis versandum?*

R. Assiduè orandum, ut Deus peccata nobis remittat, imbecillitatemque sustentet.

Q. *Quomodo orandum?*

R. Ut nos docuit Christus, Pater noster, qui es, *&c.*

Q. *Qui tibi persuades, Deum donaturum quæ petis?*

R. Quia orare jussit, pollicitusque est, quicquid peterem in Christi nomine, se mihi largiturum.

Q. *Quid debes Deo pro tot beneficiis?*

R. Ut ei gratias agam, perpetuòque serviam.

Q. *Quomodo Deo serviendum?*

R. Ex verbi ipsius præscripto, ut jam dictum est.

PRÆCIPUA CAPITA CHRISTIANÆ RELIGIONIS,

desumpta è Sacra Scriptura Veteris ac Novi Testamenti.

I. *De DEO.*

Joan. iv. 24. DEUS est Spiritus.——

Apoc. iv. 8. Sanctus, Sanctus, Sanctus, Dominus Deus omnipotens, qui fuit, qui est, et qui venturus est.

Psal. cxlvii. 5. Dominus noster est magnus, multarumque virium, & sapientia ejus est immensa.

Exod. xxxiv. 6. ——— Jehova, Jehova Deus, misericors & exorabilis, longanimis, & abundans benignitate & fide:

Vers. 7. Custodiens misericordiam millibus, condonans iniquitatem, transgressionem & peccatum, & qui nullo pacto absolvet nocentem.

Deut. vi. 4. Jehova Deus noster est unus Jehova.

Joan. v. 7. Tres sunt qui testantur in cœlo, Pater, Sermo, & Spiritus Sanctus; & hi tres sunt unum.

II. *De creatione, lapsu, peccato, & miseriâ Hominis.*

Gen. i. 26. ET Deus dixit, Faciamus hominem ad imaginem nostram, secundum similitudinem nostram.

Vers. 27. Itaque Deus creavit hominem ad imaginem suam, ad imaginem Dei creavit eum.———

Eccl. vii. 29. Deus fecit hominem rectum.——

Rom. v. 12. Peccatum intravit in mundum per unum hominem, & mors per peccatum, & ita mors pervasit ad omnes homines, quatenus omnes peccârunt.

Rom. iii. 23. Omnes peccaverunt, ac deficiuntur gloriâ Dei.

Pſal. li. 5. En formatus ſum iniquitate, & in peccato mater mea concepit me.

III. *Redemptione generis humani per Ieſum Chriſtum.*

Joan. iii. 16. DEUS ſic amavit mundum, ut dederit filium ſuum unigenitum, ut quiſquis credit in eum, non pereat, ſed habeat vitam æternam.

1 *Jo.* iv. 9. Amor Dei patuit erga nos in hoc, quòd Deus miſit filium ſuum unigenitum in mundum, ut vivamus per eum.

V. 10. In hoc eſt amor, non quòd nos dilexerimus Deum, ſed quòd ipſe dilexerit nos, & miſerit filium ſuum, ut eſſet piaculum pro peccatis noſtris.

1 *Pet.* iii. 18. Chriſtus quoque paſſus eſt ſemel pro peccatis, juſtus pro injuſtis, ut adduceret nos ad Deum.

1 *Pet.* ii. 24. Qui ipſemet ſuſtulit peccata noſtra in ſuo corpore ſuper lignum, ut nos mortui peccatis, viverimus juſtitiæ; cujus vibicibus ſanati ſumus.

Tit. ii. 14. Qui dedit ſeipſum pro nobis ut redimeret nos ab omni iniquitate, & purificaret ſibi ipſi populum peculiarem, accenſum ſtudio bonorum operum.

IV. *De iis quæ Deus à nobis exigit, ut ſalutem per Chriſtum conſequamur.*

Act. xvi. 30. DIxit, Domini, quid faciendum eſt mihi, ut ſim ſalvus.
Verſ. 31. Et illi dixerunt, Crede in Dominum Ieſus, & ſalvus eris.

Act. iii. 19. Reſipiſcite, & convertimini, ut peccati veſtra deleantur, cùm tempora recreationis venient à conſpectu Domini.

Iſa. lv. 6. Quærite Jehovam dum poſſit inveniri; invocate eum dum eſt propinquus.

Verſ. 7. Improbus derelinquat viam ſuam, & vir iniquus cogitationes ſuas; revertaturque ad Jehovam, & miſerebitur illius: & ad Deum noſtrum, quia plurimum condonabit.

Luc. ix. 23. Si quis vult venire poſt me, ipſe abneget ſe, tollatque ſuam crucem quotidie, & ſequatur me.

Matth. xi. 28. Venite ad me omnes qui laboratis, et onerati eſtis, & ego recreabo vos.

Verſ. 29. Attollite jugum meum in vos, & diſcite à me, quia mitis ſum & humilis corde; & invenietis requiem animabus veſtris.

Verſ. 30. Jugum enim meum eſt facile, & onus meum eſt leve.

Heb. v. 9. Perfectus factus eſt auctor ſalutis æternæ omnibus obedientibus ſibi.

Jo. xiv. 15. Si amatis me, ſervate præcepta mea.

Jo. xv. 14. Vos eſtis amici mei, ſi feceritis quæcunque ego præcipio vobis.

Tit. ii. 11. Gratia Dei, quæ ſalutem adfert, apparuit omnibus hominibus;

Verſ. 12. Erudiens nos, ut, abnegatâ impietate & mundanis cupiditatibus, vivamus ſobriè, juſtè, & piè in hoc preſenti ſeculo.

Mic. vi. 8. Indicavit tibi, O homo! quid ſit bonum; & quid exigit Jehova à te, niſi ut æquum facias, & ames miſericordiam, & ambules ſubmiſsè cum Deo tuo?

Col iii. 5. Mortificate igitur veſtra membra terreſtria; ſcortationem, impuritatem, libidinem, cupiditatem malam, & avaritiam, quæ eſt idololatria:

Verſ. 6. Propter quæ, ira Dei venit ſuper filios contumaces.

Vers. 8. ——— Deponite hæc omnia, iram, excandescentiam, malitiam, maledisc entiam, obscœnitatem verborum ex ore vestro.

Vers. 9. Ne mentimini alii aliis.

Vers. 12. Induite igitur (ut electi Dei, sancti amatique) viscera misericordiæ, benignitatem, submissionem animi, lenitatem, patientiam;

Vers. 13. Sufferentes alii alios, & condonantes alii aliis: si quis habet querelam adversus aliquem, quemadmodum Christus condonavit vobis, sic quoque vos facite.

Vers. 14. Super omnia autem induite charitatem, quæ est vinculum perfectionis.

1 *Thess.* iv. 11. Et ut studeatis esse quieti, & agere res vestras, & operari propriis manibus, sicut præcepimus vobis.

1 *Pet.* ii. 27. Timete Deum, honorate regem.

Rom. xiii. 1. Omnis anima esto subjecta potestatibus supereminentibus: nulla enim est potestas nisi à Deo: potestates que sunt, sunt ordinate à Deo.

Vers. 2. Itaque quisquis obsistit potestati, obsistit ordinationi Dei: qui autem obsistunt, accipient condemnationem sibi ipsis.

1 *Thess.* v. 12. Rogamus autem vos, fratres, ut agnoscatis eos qui laborant inter vos, & præsunt vobis in Domino, & admonent vos.

Vers. 13. Et faciatis eos maximi cum amore, propter opus ipsorum.

Heb. xiii. 17. Parete gubernatoribus vestris, & obsequimini, nam ii vigilant pro animabus vestris, tanquam reddituri rationem; ut faciant id cum gaudio, et non cum dolare; id enim est inutile vobis.

Col. iii. 18. Uxores, submittite vos viris vestris, ut convenit in Domino.

Vers. 19. Viri, diligite uxores, et ne estote amarulenti adversus eas.

Eph. vi. 1. Liberi, obedite parentibus vestris in Domino, id enim æquum est.

Vers. 4. Et vos patres, ne provocate liberos vestros ad iram, sed educate eos in disciplina & admonitione Domini.

Col. iii. 22. Servi obedite dominis vestris in omnibus secundum carnem, non serviendo ad oculum, ut captantes gratiam hominum, sed cum simplicitate cordis, timentes Deum.

Vers. 23. Ac quicquid facitis, agitote id ex animo, tanquam Domino & non hominibus.

Col. iv. 1. Domini, præstate jus & æquum servis vestris, scientes vos quoque habere Dominum in cœlis.

Matth. vii. 12. Quæcunque igitur volueritis ut homines faciant vobis, vos facite etiam ita eis.

Matth. xxiv. 13. Qui sustinuerit ad finem, is servabitur.

Gal. vi. 9. Ne defetiscamur rectè faciendo; nam debito tempore metemus, si non fatigemur.

Apoc. ii. 10. Esto fidelis usque ad mortem, & dabo tibi coronam vitæ.

V. *De necessitate hæc præstandi.*

Jo. iii. 36. QUI credit in filium, habet vitam æternam; qui verò non credit filio, non videbit vitam, sed ira Dei manet super eum.

Luc. xiii. 3, 5. Nisi resipiscatis, omnes similiter peribitis.

Ezek. xxxiii. 11. Sic ego vivam, inquit Dominus Jehova, ut non delector morte impii, sed ut impius recedat à via sua, & vivat. Recedite, recedite à malis viis vestris, cur enim moreremini?

Ezek. xviii. 30. Resipiscite, & avertite vos ab omnibus peccatis vestris, ita iniquitas non erit exitio vobis.

Evening Prayer.

MOST gracious God, what ſhall I render unto thee for thy many and great Benefits beſtowed upon me; though I have been an undutiful and diſobedient Servant unto thee. Thou haſt continued thy Care and Kindneſs for me ever ſince I was born, and haſt preſerved me this Day; let me never forget thy Goodneſs, but grant that thereby I may be led to Repentance and Amendment of Life. Preſerve me from every thing that is diſpleaſing to thee. O Lord, keep me from curſing, ſwearing, and lying; from Pride, Stubbornneſs, and Idleneſs. Work in me an utter Diſlike of all Uncleanneſs, of Gluttonny and Drunkenneſs, of all Malice and Envy, of Strife and Contention, of Deceit and Covetouſneſs. Give me Grace to deny all Ungodlineſs and worldly Luſts, and to live godly, righteouſly, and ſoberly in this preſent World. Cauſe me to underſtand and conſider the Laws and Life of Jeſus, that I may do his Will and follow his Steps. Let never the Cares of this Life, nor the Love of Riches, nor evil Company, nor the corrupt Cuſtom of the World withdraw me from the Obedience of thy Laws; but ſtrengthen and eſtabliſh me by thy Holy Spirit, that I may live and die thy faithful Servant.

O Lord, ſend thy Goſpel thro' the World; pour out plenteouſly the Spirit of Truth, Holineſs, and Peace on all People: Bleſs the Church and Kingdom: Preſerve the King and all the Royal Family: Guide our Judges and Magiſtrates; ſanctify and aſſiſt the Miniſters of the Goſpel: Viſit all that are in Trouble, and ſanctify their Afflictions to them: Be gracious unto all my Kindred, Friends, and Neighbours; and bleſs and forgive all mine Enemies.

Lord, watch over me this Night, and keep me ever mindful that I am ſhortly to die and come to Judgment, that I may without Delay turn to thee, and paſs the time of my ſojourning here in thy Fear. Good Lord, hear me, and grant theſe my Deſires, and what elſe thou knoweſt to be needful for me, for the ſake of Jeſus, in whoſe Name and Words I pray, *Our Father*, &c.

Grace before Meat.

O Lord, be merciful unto us, and pardon our Sins; ſanctify theſe thy good Benefits, that we, by the ſober and thankful Uſe of them, may be enabled for thy Service, through Jeſus Chriſt, our Lord and Saviour. *Amen.*

Grace after Meat.

WE thank and praiſe thee, O Lord, the Giver of all Good, who haſt at this Time fed our Bodies; ſtir up in us a greater Care for our Souls; and grant that our ſhort Lives, which are ſo carefully ſuſtained by thy Bounty, may be ſpent in doing thy Will. Lead us ſafely through this vain and ſinful World, in which we are Pilgrims and Strangers, and at length bring us to everlaſting Reſt, through Jeſus Chriſt. *Amen.*

F I N I S.

BRITISH MUSEUM 14 JY 74

1607/2641.